



GOVERNMENT OF TAMIL NADU

STANDARD TEN

SOCIAL SCIENCE

Volume - II

A publication under Free Textbook Programme of Government of Tamil Nadu

Department of School Education

Untouchability is Inhuman and a Crime

Government of Tamil Nadu

First Edition - 2019
(Published under New Syllabus)

NOT FOR SALE

Content Creation



State Council of Educational
Research and Training
© SCERT 2019

Printing & Publishing



Tamil NaduTextbook and
Educational Services Corporation

Table of Contents

History

Unit 6	Early Revolts against British Rule in Tamil Nadu	01
Unit 7	Anti-Colonial Movements and the Birth of Nationalism	14
Unit 8	Nationalism: Gandhian Phase	34
Unit 9	Freedom Struggle in Tamil Nadu	55
Unit 10	Social Transformation in Tamil Nadu	69

Geography

Unit 6	Physical Geography of Tamil Nadu	85
Unit 7	Human Geography of Tamil Nadu	106

Civics

Unit 4	India's Foreign Policy	130
Unit 5	India's International Relations	140

Economics

Unit 3	Food Security and Nutrition	155
Unit 4	Government and Taxes	169
Unit 5	Industrial Clusters in Tamil Nadu	180



HOW TO USE THE BOOK



Learning Objectives

The scope of the lesson is presented

Introduction

The subject to be discussed in the lesson is Introduced



QR Code

Leads the students to animated audio, video aids for getting experiential learning

Do You Know?

Provides additional information related to the subject in boxes to stir up the curiosity of students



Infographs

Visual representations intended to make the complex simple and make the students grasp difficult concepts easily

Fun with History

Activities for 'learning by doing' individually or in groups

Summary

Describes the main points briefly in bullets for recapitulation

Exercise

For self-study and self evaluation



Glossary

Key words and technical terms explained at the end of the lesson for clarity

Reference

List of books and net sources for further reading



ICT Corner

Using technology for learning activities, which enables the students to access digital sources relevant to their lessons.

Let's use the QR code in the text books!



- Download DIKSHA app from the Google Play Store.
- Tap the QR code icon to scan QR codes in the textbook.
- Point the device and focus on the QR code.
- On successful scan, content linked to the QR code gets listed.
- Note: For ICT corner, Digi Links QR codes use any other QR scanner.

Unit - 6

Early Revolts against British Rule in Tamil Nadu



Learning Objectives

To acquaint ourselves with

- Palayakkarar system and the revolts of Palayakkarars against the British
- Velunachiyar, Puli Thevar, Kattabomman and Marudhu Brothers in the anti-British uprisings
- Vellore Revolt as a response to British pacification of south India



Introduction

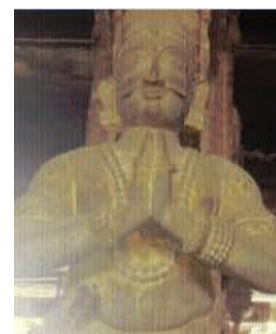
After defeating the French and their Indian allies in the three Carnatic Wars, the East India Company began to consolidate and extend its power and influence. However, local kings and feudal chieftains resisted this. The first resistance to East India Company's territorial aggrandisement was from Puli Thevar of Nerkattumseval in the Tirunelveli region. This was followed by other chieftains in the Tamil country such as Velunachiyar, Veerapandiya Kattabomman, the Marudhu brothers, and Dheeran Chinnamalai. Known as the Palayakkarars Wars, the culmination of which was Vellore Revolt of 1806, this early resistance to British rule in Tamilnadu is dealt with in this lesson.

6.1 Resistance of Regional Powers against the British

(a) Palayams and Palayakkarars

The word “palayam” means a domain, a military camp, or a little kingdom.

Palayakkarars (Poligar is how the British referred to them) in Tamil refers to the holder of a little kingdom as a feudatory to a greater sovereign. Under this system, palayam was given for valuable military services rendered by any individual. This type of Palayakkarars system was in practice during the rule of Pratapa Rudhra of Warangal in the Kakatiya kingdom. The system was put in place in Tamilnadu by Viswanatha Nayaka, when he became the Nayak ruler of Madurai in 1529, with the support of his minister Ariyanathar. Traditionally there were supposed to be 72 Palayakkarars.



Viswanatha Nayaka

The Palayakkarars were free to collect revenue, administer the territory, settle disputes and maintain law and order. Their police duties were known as Padikaval or Arasu Kaval. On many occasions the Palayakarars helped the Nayak rulers to

restore the kingdom to them. The personal relationship and an understanding between the King and the Palayakkarars made the system to last for about two hundred years from the Nayaks of Madurai, until the takeover of these territories by the British.

Eastern and Western Palayams

Among the 72 Palayakkarars, created by the Nayak rulers, there were two blocs, namely the prominent eastern and the western Palayams. The eastern Palayams were Sattur, Nagalapuram, Ettayapuram, and Panchalamkurichi and the prominent western palayams were Uthumalai, Thalavankottai, Naduvakurichi, Singampatti, Seithur. During the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries the Palayakkars dominated the politics of Tamil country. They functioned as independent, sovereign authorities within their respective Palayams.

Revenue Collection Authority to the Company Rule

The Nawab of Arcot had borrowed money from the East India Company to meet the expenses he had incurred during the Carnatic Wars. When his debts exceeded his capacity to pay, the power of collecting the land revenue dues from southern Palayakkarars was given to the East India Company. Claiming that their lands had been handed down to them over sixty generations, many Palayakkarars refused to pay taxes to the Company officials. The Company branded the defiant Palayakkarars as rebels and accused them of trying to disturb the peace and tranquillity of the country. This led to conflict between the East India Company and the Palaykkarars which are described below.

6.2 Palayakkarars' Revolt 1755-1801

(a) Revolt of Puli Thevar 1755-1767

In March 1755 Mahfuzkhan (brother of the Nawab of Arcot) was sent with a contingent of the Company army under Colonel Heron

to Tirunelveli. Madurai easily fell into their hands. Thereafter Colonel Heron was urged to deal with Puli Thevar as he continued to defy the authority



Puli Thevar

of the Company. Puli Thevar wielded much influence over the western palyakkarars. For want of cannon and of supplies and pay to soldiers, Colonel Heron abandoned the plan and retired to Madurai. Heron was recalled and dismissed from service.

Confederacy and Alliance with Enemies of the British

Three Pathan officers, Nawab Chanda Sahib's agents, named Mianah, Mudimiah and Nabikhan Kattak commanded the Madurai and Tirunelveli regions. They supported the Tamil playakkarars against Arcot Nawab Mohamed Ali. Puli Thevar had established close relationships with them. Puli Thevar also formed a confederacy of the Palayakkars to fight the British. With the exception of the Palayakkarars of Sivagiri, all other Maravar Palayams supported him. Ettayapuram and Panchalamkurichi also did not join this confederacy. Further, the English succeeded in getting the support of the rajas of Ramanathapuram and Pudukottai. Puli Thevar tried to get the support of Hyder Ali of Mysore and the French. Hyder Ali could not help Puli Thevar as he was already locked in a serious conflict with the Marathas.

Kalakadu Battle

The Nawab sent an additional contingent of sepoys to Mahfuzkhan and the reinforced army proceeded to Tirunelveli. Besides the 1000 sepoys of the Company, Mahfuzkhan received 600 more sent by the Nawab. He also had the support of cavalry and foot soldiers from the Carnatic. Before Mahfuzkhan could

station his troops near Kalakadu, 2000 soldiers from Travancore joined the forces of Puli Thevar. In the battle at Kalakadu, Mahfuzkhan's troops were routed.

Yusuf Khan and Puli Thevar

The organized resistance of the palayakkarars under Puli Thevar gave an opportunity to the English to interfere directly in the affairs of Tirunelveli. Aided by the Raja of Travancore, from 1756 to 1763, the palayakkarars of Tirunelveli led by Puli Thevar were in a constant state of rebellion against the Nawab's authority. Yusuf Khan (also known as Khan Sahib or, before his conversion to Islam, Marudhanayagam) who had been sent by the Company was not prepared to attack Puli Thevar unless the big guns and ammunition from Tiruchirappalli arrived. As the English were at war with the French, as well as with Hyder Ali and Marathas, the artillery arrived only in September 1760. Yusuf Khan began to batter the Nerkattumseval fort and this attack continued for about two months. On 16 May 1761 Puli Thevar's three major forts (Nerkattumseval, Vasudevanallur and Panayur) came under the control of Yusuf Khan.

In the meantime, after taking Pondicherry the English had eliminated the French from the picture. As a result of this the unity of palayakkarars began to break up as French support was not forthcoming. Travancore, Seithur, Uthumalai and Surandai switched their loyalty to the opposite camp. Yusuf Khan who was negotiating with the palayakkarars, without informing the Company administration, was charged with treachery and hanged in 1764.

Fall of Puli Thevar

After the death of Khan Sahib, Puli Thevar returned from exile and recaptured Nerkattumseval in 1764. However, he was defeated by Captain Campbell in 1767. Puli Thevar escaped and died in exile.

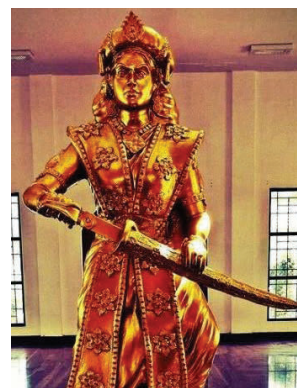
Ondiveeran

Ondiveeran led one of the army units of Puli Thevar. Fighting by the side of Puli Thevar, he caused much damage to the Company's army. According to oral tradition, in one battle, Ondiveeran's hand was chopped off and Puli Thevar was saddened. But Ondiveeran said it was a reward for his penetration into enemy's fort causing many heads to roll.

(b) Velunachiyar (1730–1796)

Born in 1730 to the Raja Sellamuthu Sethupathy of Ramanathapuram, Velunachiyar was the only daughter of this royal family. The king had no male heir. The royal family brought up the princess Velunachiyar, training her in martial arts like *valari*, stick fighting and to wield weapons. She was also adept in horse riding and archery, apart from her proficiency in English, French and Urdu.

At the age of 16, Velunachiyar was married to Muthu Vadugar, the Raja of Sivagangai, and had a daughter by name Vellachinachiar. In 1772, the Nawab of Arcot and the Company troops under the command



Velunachiyar of Lt. Col. Bon Jour stormed the Kalaiyar Kovil Palace. In the ensuing battle Muthu Vadugar was killed. Velunachiyar escaped with her daughter and lived under the protection of Gopala Nayakar at Virupachi near Dindigul for eight years.

During her period in hiding, Velunachiyar organised an army and succeeded in securing an alliance with not only Gopala Nayakar but Hyder Ali as well. Dalavay (military chief) Thandavarayanar wrote a letter to Sultan Hyder Ali on behalf of Velunachiyar asking for 5000 infantry and 5000 cavalry to defeat the English. Velunachiyar explained in detail in Urdu all the

problems she had with East India Company. She conveyed her strong determination to fight the English. Impressed by her courage, Hyder Ali ordered his Commandant Syed in Dindigul fort to provide the required military assistance.

Gopala Nayak, the Palayakkarar of Virupachi

Gopala Nayak spearheaded the famous Dindigul League, which was formed with Lakshmi Nayak of Manaparai and Poojai Nayak of Devadanapatti. He drew inspiration from Tipu Sultan who sent a deputation to show his camaraderie. He led the resistance against the British from Coimbatore and later joined Oomaidurai, Kattabomman's brother. He put up a fierce fight at Aanamalai hills where the local peasants gave him full support. But Gopala Nayak was overpowered by the British forces in 1801.

Velunachiyar employed agents for gathering intelligence to find where the British had stored their ammunition. With military assistance from Gopala Nayakar and Hyder Ali she recaptured Sivagangai. She was crowned as Queen with the help of Marudhu brothers. She was the first female ruler or queen to resist the British colonial power in India.

Kuyili, a faithful friend of Velunachiyar, is said to have led the unit of women soldiers named after Udaya. Udaya was a shepherd girl who was killed for not divulging information on Kuyili. Kuyili is said to have walked into the British arsenal (1780) after setting herself on fire, thus destroying all the ammunition.

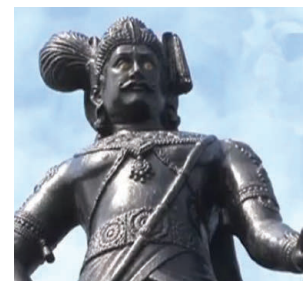


Kuyili

(c) Rebellion of Veerapandya Kattabomman 1790-1799

Veerapandya Kattabomman became the Palayakkarar of Panchalamkurichi at the age of thirty on the death of his father,

Jagavira Pandya Kattabomman. The Company's administrators, James London and Colin Jackson, had considered him a man of peaceful



Kattabomman

disposition. However, soon several events led to conflicts between Veerapandya Kattabomman and the East India Company. The Nawab, under the provisions of a treaty signed in 1781, had assigned the revenue of the Carnatic to the Company to be entirely under their management and control during the war with Mysore Sultan. One-sixth of the revenue was to be allowed to meet the expenses of Nawab and his family. The Company had thus gained the right to collect taxes from Panchalamkurichi. The Company appointed its Collectors to collect taxes from all the palayams. The Collectors humiliated the palayakkarars and adopted force to collect the taxes. This was the bone of contention between the English and Kattabomman.

Confrontation with Jackson

The land revenue arrear from Kattabomman was 3310 pagodas in 1798. Collector Jackson, an arrogant English officer, wanted to send



an army to collect the revenue dues but the Madras Government did not give him permission. On 18 August 1798, he ordered Kattabomman to meet him in Ramanathapuram. But Kattabomman's attempts to meet him in between proved futile, as Jackson refused to give him audience both in Courtallam and Srivilliputhur. At last, an interview was granted and Kattabomman met Jackson in Ramanathapuram on 19 September 1798. It is said that Kattabomman had to stand for three hours before the haughty Collector

Jackson. Sensing danger, Kattabomman tried to escape, along with his minister Sivasubramanianar. Oomaithurai suddenly entered the fort with his men and helped the escape of Kattabomman. At the gate of the Ramanathapuram fort there was a clash, in which some people including Lieutenant Clarke were killed. Sivasubramanianar was taken prisoner.

Appearance before Madras Council

On his return to Panchalamkurichi, Kattabomman represented to the Madras Council about how he was ill-treated by the collector Jackson. The Council asked Kattabomman to appear before a committee with William Brown, William Oram and John Casamajor as members. Meanwhile, Governor Edward Clive, ordered the release of Sivasubramanianar and the suspension of the Collector Jackson. Kattabomman appeared before the Committee that sat on 15 December 1798 and reported on what transpired in Ramanathapuram. The Committee found Kattabomman was not guilty. Jackson was dismissed from service and a new Collector S.R. Lushington appointed. Kattabomman cleared almost all the revenue arrears leaving only a balance of 1080 pagodas.



Pagodas (coins)

Kattabomman and the Confederacy of Palayakkarars

In the meantime, Marudhu Pandiyar of Sivagangai formed the South Indian Confederacy of rebels against the British, with the neighbouring palayakkars like Gopala Nayak of Dindigul and Yadul Nayak

of Aanamalai. Marudhu Pandiyar acted as its leader. The Tiruchirappalli Proclamation had been made. Kattabomman was interested in this confederacy. Collector Lushington prevented Kattabomman from meeting the Marudhu Brothers. But Marudhu Brothers and Kattabomman jointly decided on a confrontation with the English. Kattabomman tried to influence Sivagiri Palayakkarars, who refused to join. Kattabomman advanced towards Sivagiri. But the Palayakkarars of Sivagiri was a tributary to the Company. So the Company considered the expedition of Kattabomman as a challenge to their authority. The Company ordered the army to march on to Tirunelveli.

The Siege of Panchalamkurichi



Panchalamkurichi Fort

In May 1799, Lord Wellesley issued orders from Madras for the advance of forces from Tiruchirappalli, Thanjavur and Madurai to Tirunelveli. Major Bannerman commanded the troops. The Travancore troops too joined the British. On 1 September 1799, an ultimatum was served on Kattabomman to surrender. Kattabomman's "evasive reply" prompted Bannerman to attack his fort. Bannerman moved his entire army to Panchalamkurichi on 5 September. They cut off all the communications to the fort. Bannerman deputed Ramalinganar to convey a message asking Kattabomman to surrender. Kattabomman refused. Ramalinganar gathered all the secrets of the Fort, and on the basis of his report, Bannerman decided

the strategy of the operation. In a clash at Kallarpatti, Sivasubramanianar was taken a prisoner.

Execution of Kattabomman

Kattabomman escaped to Pudukottai. The British put a prize on his head. Betrayed by the rajas of Ettayapuram and Pudukottai Kattabomman was finally captured. Sivasubramanianar was executed at Nagalapuram on the 13 September. Bannerman made a mockery of a trial for Kattabomman in front of the palayakarars on 16 October. During the trial Kattabomman bravely admitted all the charges levelled against him. Kattabomman was hanged from a tamarind tree in the old fort of Kayathar, close to Tirunelveli, in front of the fellow Palayakkars. Thus ended the life of the celebrated Palayakkarars of Panchalamkurichi. Many folk ballads on Kattabomman helped keep his memory alive among the people.

(d) The Marudhu Brothers



Marudhu Brothers

Periya Marudhu or Vella Marudhu (1748–1801) and his younger brother Chinna Marudhu (1753–1801) were able generals of Muthu Vadugar of Sivagangai. After Muthu Vadugar's death in the Kalaiyar Kovil battle Marudhu brothers assisted in restoring the throne to Velunachiyar. In the last years of the eighteenth century Marudhu Brothers

organised resistance against the British. After the death of Kattabomman, they worked along with his brother Oomathurai. They plundered the granaries of the Nawab and caused damage and destruction to Company troops.

Rebellion of Marudhu Brothers (1800–1801)

Despite the suppression of Kattabomman's revolt in 1799, rebellion broke out again in 1800. In the British records it is referred to as the Second Palayakarar War. It was directed by a confederacy consisting of Marudhu Pandyan of Sivagangai, Gopala Nayak of Dindugal, Kerala Varma of Malabar and Krishnaappa Nayak and Dhoondaji of Mysore. In April 1800 they meet at Virupachi and decided to organise an uprising against the Company. The uprising, which broke out in Coimbatore in June 1800, soon spread to Ramanathapuram and Madurai. The Company got wind of it and declared war on Krishnappa Nayak of Mysore, Kerala Varma of Malabar and others. The Palayakars of Coimbatore, Sathyamangalam and Tarapuram were caught and hanged.

In February 1801 the two brothers of Kattabomman, Oomathurai and Sevathaiah, escaped from the Palayamkottai prison to Kamudhi, from where Chinna Marudhu took them to Siruvayal his capital. The fort at Panchalamkurichi was reconstructed in record time. The British troops under Colin Macaulay retook the fort in April and the Marudhu brothers sought shelter in Sivagangai. The English demanded that the Marudhu Pandyars hand over the fugitives (Oomathurai and Sevathaiah). But they refused. Colonel Agnew and Colonel Innes marched on Sivagangai. In June 1801 Marudhu Pandyars issued a proclamation of Independence which is called Tiruchirappalli Proclamation.

Proclamation of 1801

The Proclamation of 1801 was an early call to the Indians to unite against the British, cutting across region, caste, creed and religion. The proclamation was



pasted on the walls of the Nawab's palace in Tiruchirappalli fort and on the walls of the Srirangam temple. Many palayakkars of Tamil country rallied together to fight against the English. Chinna Marudhu collected nearly 20,000 men to challenge the English army. British reinforcements were rushed from Bengal, Ceylon and Malaya. The rajas of Pudukkottai, Ettayapuram and Thanjavur stood by the British. Divide and rule policy followed by the English spilt the forces of the palayakkarars soon.

Fall of Sivagangai

In May 1801, the English attacked the rebels in Thanjavur and Tiruchirappalli. The rebels went to Piranmalai and Kalayarkoil. They were again defeated by the forces of the English. In the end the superior military strength and the able commanders of the English Company prevailed. The rebellion failed and Sivagangai was annexed in 1801. The Marudhu brothers were executed in the Fort of Tirupathur near Ramanathapuram on 24 October 1801. Oomathurai and Sevathaiah were captured and beheaded at Panchalamkurichi on 16 November 1801. Seventy-three rebels were exiled to Penang in Malaya. Though the palayakkarars fell to the English, their exploits and sacrifices inspired later generations. Thus the rebellion of Marudhu brothers, which is called South Indian Rebellion, is a landmark event in the history of Tamil Nadu.

Carnatic Treaty, 1801

The suppression of the Palayakkarars rebellions of 1799 and 1800–1801 resulted in the liquidation of all the local chieftains of Tamilnadu. Under the terms of the Carnatic Treaty of 31 July 1801, the British assumed direct control over Tamilagam and the Palayakarar system came to an end with the demolition of all forts and disbandment of their army.

(e) Dheeran Chinnamalai (1756–1805)

Born as Theerthagiri in 1756 in the Mandradiar royal family of Palayakottai, Dheeran was well trained in silambu, archery, horse riding and modern warfare. He was involved in resolving family and



Dheeran Chinnamalai

land disputes in the Kongu region. As this region was under the control of the Mysore Sultan, tax was collected by Tipu's Diwan Mohammed Ali. Once, when the Diwan was returning to Mysore with the tax money, Theerthagiri blocked his way and confiscated all the tax money. He let Mohammed Ali go by instructing him to tell his Sultan that "Chinnamalai", who is between Sivamalai and Chennimalai, was the one who took away taxes. Thus he gained the name "Dheeran Chinnamalai". The offended Diwan sent a contingent to attack Chinnamalai and both the forces met and fought at the Noyyal river bed. Chinnamalai emerged victorious.

Trained by the French, Dheeran mobilised the Kongu youth in thousands and fought the British together with Tipu. After Tipu's death Dheeran Chinnamalai built a fort and fought the British without leaving the place. Hence the place is called *Odanilai*. He launched guerrilla attacks and evaded capture. Finally the English captured him and his brothers and kept them in prison in Sankagiri. When they were asked to accept the rule of the British, they refused. So they were hanged at the top of the Sankagiri Fort on 31 July 1805.

6.3 Vellore Revolt 1806

Before reducing all palayakkarars of south Tamilnadu into submission the East India Company had acquired the revenue districts



of Salem, Dindigul at the conclusion of the war with Tipu in 1792. Coimbatore was annexed at the end of the Anglo-Mysore War in 1799. In the same year the Raja of Thanjavur whose status had been reduced to that of a vassal in 1798 gave up his sovereign rights over that region to the English. After the suppression of resistance of Kattabomman (1799) and Marudhu Brothers (1801), the British charged the Nawab of Arcot with disloyalty and forced a treaty on him. According to this Treaty of 1801, the Nawab was to cede the districts of North Arcot, South Arcot, Tiruchirappalli, Madurai and Tirunelveli to the Company and transfer all the administrative powers to it.

(a) Grievances of Indian Soldiers

But the resistance did not die down. The dispossessed little kings and feudal chieftains continued to deliberate on the future course of action against the Company Government. The outcome was the Vellore Revolt of 1806. The objective conditions for a last ditch fight existed on the eve of the revolt. The sepoys in the British Indian army nursed a strong sense of resentment over low salary and poor prospects of promotion. The English army officers' scant respect for the social and religious sentiments of the Indian sepoys also angered them. The state of peasantry from which class the sepoys had been recruited also bothered them much. With new experiments in land tenures causing unsettled conditions and famine breaking out in 1805 many of the sepoys' families were in dire economic straits. The most opportune situation came with the

sons and the family members of Tipu being interned in Vellore Fort. The trigger for the revolt came in the form of a new military regulation notified by the Commander-in-Chief Sir John Cradock.

According to the new regulations, the Indian soldiers were asked not to wear caste marks or ear rings when in uniform. They were to be cleanly shaven on the chin and maintain uniformity about how their moustache looked. The new turban added fuel to fire. The most objectionable addition was the leather cockade made of animal skin. The sepoys gave enough forewarning by refusing to wear the new turban. Yet the Company administration did not take heed.

(b) Outbreak of the Revolt

On 10 July 1806, in the early hours, guns were booming and the Indian sepoys of the 1st and 23rd regiments raised their standard of revolt. Colonel Fancourt, who commanded the garrison, was the first victim. Colonel McKerras of the 23rd regiment was killed next. Major Armstrong who was passing the Fort heard the sound of firing. When he stopped to enquire he was showered with bullets. About a dozen other officers were killed within an hour or so. Among them Lt. Elly and Lt. Popham belonged to His Majesty's battalion.

Gillespie's Brutality

Major Cootes, who was outside the Fort, informed Colonel Gillespie, the cavalry commandant in Arcot. Gillespie



Vellore Fort





Centres of Early Revolts against British Rule in Tamil Nadu



reached the fort along with a squadron of cavalry under the command of Captain Young at 9.00 am. In the meantime, the rebels proclaimed Fateh Hyder, Tipu's eldest son, as their new ruler and hoisted the tiger flag of Mysore sultans in the Fort. But the uprising was swiftly crushed by Col. Gillespie, who threw to winds all war ethics. In the course of suppression, according to an eyewitness account, eight hundred soldiers were found dead in the fort alone. Six hundred soldiers were kept in confinement in Tiruchirappalli and Vellore awaiting Inquiry.

(c) Consequences of Revolt

Six of the rebels convicted by the Court of Enquiry were blown from the guns; five were shot dead; eight hanged. Tipu's sons were ordered to be sent to Calcutta. The officers and men engaged in the suppression of the revolt were rewarded with prize money and promotion. Col. Gillespie was given 7,000 pagodas. However, the commander-in-

chief Sir John Cradock, the Adjutant General Agnew and Governor William Bentinck were held responsible for the revolt, removed from their office, and recalled to England. The military regulations were treated as withdrawn.

(d) Estimate of Revolt

The Vellore Revolt failed because there was no immediate help from outside. Recent studies show that the organising part of the revolt was done perfectly by Subedars Sheik Adam and Sheik Hamid and Jamedar Sheik Hussain of the 2nd battalion of 23rd regiment and two Subedars and the Jamedar Sheik Kasim of the 1st battalion of the 1st regiment. Vellore Revolt had all the forebodings of the Great Rebellion of 1857. The only difference was that there was no civil rebellion following the mutiny. The 1806 revolt was not confined to Vellore Fort. It had its echoes in Bellary, Walajabad, Hyderabad, Bengaluru, Nandydurg, and Sankaridurg.

SUMMARY

- The Palayakkarar system is explained.
- Prominent Palayakkarars of Tamil country and their resistance to the rule of East India Company are discussed.
- The wars waged by Puli Thevar, Velunachiyar, Veerapandya Kattabomman, followed by Marudhu brothers of Sivagangai and Dheeran Chinnamalai against the British are elaborated.
- The reasons for the Vellore Revolt and the ruthless manner in which it was suppressed by Gillespie are detailed.

A-Z GLOSSARY

protege	dependent, a person who receives support from a patron	பிறர் ஆதரவில் இருப்பவர்
aggrandizement	the act of elevating or raising one's wealth, prestige and power	செல்வாக்கை வளர்த்தல், ஆக்கிரமிப்பு செய்தல்
defiant	resisting, disobedient	பணிய மறுக்கும்
tranquillity	harmony, peace, free from disturbances	அமைதி
treachery	disloyalty, betrayal, breach of trust	வஞ்சித்தல்
audacious	daring, fearless	பயமற்ற, துணிவுமிக்க
ultimatum	a final dominating demand	இறுதி எச்சரிக்கை
bounty	payment or reward – something given liberally	கொடை
cockade	an ornament, especially a knot of ribbon worn on the hat	தொப்பியை அணிசெய்யும் குஞ்சம்
cognizance	notice, having knowledge of	கவனம்
trounce	crush, defeat	தோற்கடி
interned	imprisoned	சிறைப்படுத்தல்



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

- Who was the first Palayakkarars to resist the East India Company's policy of territorial aggrandizement?
 - Marudhu brothers
 - Puli Thevar
 - Velunachiyar
 - Veerapandya Kattabomman
- Who had borrowed money from the East India Company to meet the expenses he had incurred during the Carnatic wars?
 - Velunachiyar
 - Puli Thevar
 - Nawab of Arcot
 - Raja of Travancore
- Who had established close relationship with the three agents of Chanda Sahib?
 - Velunachiyar
 - Kattabomman
 - Puli Thevar
 - Oomai thurai
- Where was Sivasubramanian executed?
 - Kayathar
 - Nagalapuram
 - Virupachi
 - Panchalamkurichi
- Who issued the Tiruchirappalli proclamation of Independence?
 - Marudhu brothers
 - Puli Thevar
 - Veerapandya Kattabomman
 - Gopala Nayak
- When did the Vellore Revolt breakout?
 - 24 May 1805
 - 10 July 1805
 - 10 July 1806
 - 10 September 1806



7. Who was the Commander-in-Chief responsible for the new military regulations in Vellore fort?
- Col. Fancourt
 - Major Armstrong
 - Sir John Cradock
 - Colonel Agnew
8. Where were the sons of Tipu Sultan sent after the Vellore Revolt?
- Calcutta
 - Mumbai
 - Delhi
 - Mysore

II. Fill in the blanks

- The Palayakkarars system was put in place in Tamil Nadu by _____.
- Except the Palayakkarars of _____, all other western Palayakkarars supported Puli Thevar.
- Velunachiyar and her daughter were under the protection of _____ for eight years.
- Bennerman deputed _____ to convey his message, asking Kattabomman to surrender.
- Kattabomman was hanged to death at _____.
- The Rebellion of Marudhu Brothers was categorized in the British records as the _____.
- _____ was declared the new Sultan by the rebels in Vellore Fort.
- _____ suppressed the revolt in Vellore Fort.

III. Choose the correct statement

- i) The Palayakkarars system was in practice in the Kakatiya Kingdom.
ii) Puli Thevar recaptured Nerkattumseval in 1764 after the death of Khan Sahib.
iii) Yusuf Khan who was negotiating with the Palayakkarars, without informing the Company administration was charged with treachery and hanged in 1764.
iv) Ondiveeran led one of the army units of Kattabomman.

- (i), (ii) and (iv) are correct
- (i), (ii) and (iii) are correct
- (iii) and (iv) are correct
- (i) and (iv) are correct

2. i) Under Colonel Campbell, the English Army went along with Mahfuzkhan's army.
ii) After Muthu Vadugar's death in Kalaiyar Kovil battle, Marudhu Brothers assisted Velunachiyar in restoring the throne to her.
iii) Gopala Nayak spearheaded the famous Dindigul League.
iv) In May 1799 Cornwallis ordered the advance of Company armies to Tirunelveli.
- (i) and (ii) are correct
 - (ii) and (iii) are correct
 - (ii), (iii) and (iv) are correct
 - (i) and (iv) are correct

3. **Assertion (A):** Puli Thevar tried to get the support of Hyder Ali and the French.

Reason (R): Hyder Ali could not help Puli Thevar as he was already in a serious conflict with the Marathas.

- Both (A) and (R) are correct, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A)
- Both (A) and (R) are wrong
- Both (A) and (R) are correct and (R) is the correct explanation of (A)
- (A) is wrong and (R) is correct

4. **Assertion (A):** Apart from the new military Regulations the most objectionable was the addition of a leather cockade in the turban.

Reason (R): The leather cockade was made of animal skin.

- (A) is wrong and (R) is correct
- Both (A) and (R) are correct and (R) is the correct explanation of (A)



- c) Both (A) and (R) are wrong
- d) Both (A) and (R) are correct, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A)

IV. Match the following

- 1. Theerthagiri - Vellore Revolt
- 2. Gopala Nayak - Ramalinganar
- 3. Bannerman - Dindigul
- 4. Subedar Sheik Adam - Vellore Fort
- 5. Col. Fancourt - Odanilai

V. Answer the questions briefly

- 1. What were the duties of the Palayakkarars?
- 2. Identify the Palayams based on the division of east and west.
- 3. Why was Heron dismissed from service?
- 4. What was the significance of the Battle of Kalakadu?
- 5. What was the bone of contention between the Company and Kottabomman?
- 6. Highlight the essence of the Tiruchirappalli Proclamation of 1801.
- 7. Point out the importance of the Treaty of 1801.

VI. Answer the questions given under each caption

- 1. Velunachiyar
 - a) Who was the military chief of Velunachiyar?
 - b) What were the martial arts in which she was trained?
 - c) Whom did she marry?
 - d) What was the name of her daughter?
- 2. Dheeran Chinnamalai
 - a) When was Dheeran Chinnamalai born?
 - b) How did he earn the title "Chinnamalai"?
 - c) Name the Diwan of Tipu Sultan?
 - d) Why and where was he hanged to death?

VII. Answer in detail

- 1. Attempt an essay of the heroic fight Veerapandya Kattabomman conducted against the East India Company.
- 2. Highlight the tragic fall of Sivagangai and its outcome.
- 3. Account for the outbreak of Vellore Revolt in 1806.

VIII. Activities

- 1. Teacher can ask the students to prepare an album of patriotic leaders of early revolts against the British rule in Tamil Nadu. Using their imagination they can also draw pictures of different battles in which they attained martyrdom
- 2. Stage play visualising the conversation between Jackson and Kattabomman be attempted by students with the help of teachers.
- 3. A comparative study of Vellore Revolt and 1857 Revolt by students be tried enabling them to find out to what extent Vellore Revolt had all the forebodings of the latter.



REFERENCE BOOKS

- 1. Burton Stein, *Peasant State and Society in Medieval South India*, New Delhi:Oxford University Press, 1980.
- 2. P.M. Lalitha, *Palayakarars as Feudatories Under the Nayaks of Madurai*, Chennai: Creative Enterprises, 2015.
- 3. K. Rajayyan, *South Indian Rebellion, 1800-1801*, Madurai, Ratna Publication, 2000 (Reprint).
- 4. K.A. Manikumar, *Vellore Revolt 1806* (Chennai: Allied Publishers, 2007).

Unit - 7

Anti-Colonial Movements and the Birth of Nationalism



Learning Objectives

To acquaint ourselves with

- The nature of tribal and peasant revolts against the British
- Contributory factors for the outbreak of the Great Rebellion of 1857 and the subsequent changes in the British approach to governing India
- Factors leading to the formation of the Indian National Congress and the perspectives of the early nationalists
- Divide and rule policy of the British behind the Partition of Bengal (1905) and the launch of Swadeshi movement in Bengal
- Background for the launch of Home Rule Movement



Introduction

On 23 June 1757 the Nawab of Bengal Siraj-ud-daulah was defeated by the East India Company at the Battle of Plassey. The battle was orchestrated by Robert Clive, commander-in-chief of the East India Company, who managed to get the clandestine support from Mir Jafar, the uncle of Siraj-ud-daulah and the chief of the Nawab's army. Clive was helped by the Jagat Seths (moneylenders from Bengal) who were aggrieved by Siraj-ud-daulah's policy. The Battle of Plassey was followed by the plunder of Bengal. Between 1757 and 1760, the company received ₹ 22.5 million from Mir Jafar, who became the new *Nawab* of Bengal. The same money was later invested to propel the industrial revolution in Britain, which rapidly mechanised the British textile industry. On the other hand, India was led to the path of de-industrialisation and forced to create a market for the products manufactured in Britain. The plunder of India by the East India Company continued for another 190 years.

After Plassey, the British adopted a policy of territorial expansion. Soon the remaining parts of the Indian subcontinent came under their control. British brought systemic changes in land revenue administration, army, police, judicial system and other institutions of governance.

The early Indian response to colonial exploitation and the colonial political and economic domination consisted of two elements. The response in the late 18th and early 19th century was restorative in nature. Tribal uprisings and peasant rebellions made an attempt to restore the old order. The second response appeared in the second half of the 19th century in the form of Indian nationalism that imagined India as a nation emphasising on a consciousness of unity and national aspiration.

In this lesson the story of resistance and a varied range of response against the British rule in the Indian subcontinent from the early and mid-nineteenth century to the early twentieth century are outlined. In the process the nature

of British rule, its policies and administrative apparatus, which adversely affected almost all the sections of the society are analysed.

7.1 Peasant and Tribal Resistance

While the urban elite of India was busy responding to the western ideas and rationality by engaging in various socio-religious reform movements, a far more aggressive response to the British rule emerged in rural India. The traditional elite and peasantry along with the tribals revolted. They were not necessarily seeking the removal of British but rather the restoration of the pre-colonial order.

The concept of private property rights in land, rigorous collection of land revenue, encroachment of tribal land by the non-tribal people, the interference of Christian missionaries in the socio-religious life of the local people were a few of the many issues which added to the sense of resentment against the British. The tribal people, in particular, started looking at them as invaders and encroachers. The fundamental aspect of various tribal and peasant revolts was that all of them tried to eliminate the most immediate and visible cause of their misery. There were nearly a hundred peasant uprisings during British rule. They can be classified into the following categories:

- a. **Restorative rebellions** – Agitation of this type relates to attempts to restore old order and old social relations.
- b. **Religious Movements** – Such agitations were led by religious leaders who fought for the liberation of the local populace by restructuring society on certain religious principles.
- c. **Social Banditry** – The leaders of such movements were considered criminal by the British and the traditional elite but were looked upon by their people as heroes or champions of their cause.

- d. **Mass Insurrection** – Usually leaderless and spontaneous uprising.

Changes in the Revenue System

The East India Company restructured the Mughal revenue system across India in such a manner that it increased the financial burden on the peasants. There was no widespread system of private ownership of the land in pre-British India. Similarly, zamindars and others who were to collect revenue and remit it to the govt were never given the possession right on land. So the changes introduced by the British in land tenures, as we studied in Std. IX significantly altered the agrarian relations.

Subletting of Land

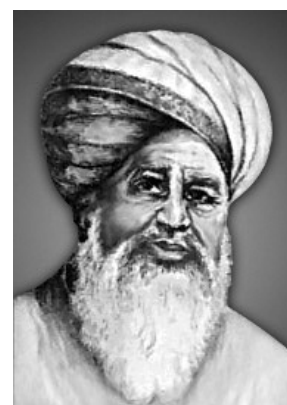
The practice of letting out and subletting of land complicated the agrarian relations. The zamindar often sublet land to many subordinate lords who in return collected a fixed amount of revenue from the peasant. This increased the tax burden on the peasants.

(a) Peasant Uprising

Peasant revolts began to erupt in the early 19th century and continued till the very end of British rule in India. Many of these revolts were led by religious leaders, who treated the British rule as an invasion into the socio-religious life of the people of India.

Farazi Movement

Farazi movement launched by Haji Shariatullah in 1818, in the parts of eastern Bengal, advocated the participants to abstain from un-Islamic activities. This brought him into direct conflict with the Zamindars and subsequently with



Haji Shariatullah

British, who favoured the Zamindars to suppress the peasant uprising. After the death

of Shariatullah in 1839, the rebellion was led by his son Dudu Mian who called upon the peasants not to pay tax. It gained popularity on a simple doctrine that land and all wealth should be equally enjoyed by the common folk. Dudu Mian laid emphasis on the egalitarian nature of religion and declared that “Land belongs to God”, and collecting rent or levying taxes on it was therefore against divine law. Large numbers of peasants were mobilised through a network of village organisations. There were violent clashes throughout 1840s and 1850s with the zamindars and planters. After the death of Dudu Mian in 1862, the was revived in the 1870s by Noah Mian.

Wahhabi Rebellion in Barasat

The Wahhabi rebellion was an anti-imperial and anti-landlord movement. It originated in and around 1827, in the Barasat region of Bengal. It was led by an Islamic preacher Titu Mir who was deeply influenced by the Wahhabi teachings. He became an influential figure among the predominately Muslim peasantry oppressed under the coercive zamindari system. However, the fact that the majority of zamindars were Hindus, gave this movement an anti-Hindu complexion.



Titu Mir

On 6 November 1831 the first major attack was launched in the town of Purnea. Titu Mir immediately declared freedom from British rule. Soon there was retaliation from the British and a large number of troops were sent to Narkelberia. Titu Mir along with his 50 soldiers were killed in the struggle.

In the end, the peasant rebellion clearly showed an awareness of the power structure in rural society and a strong will to restructure authority. The rebels were quite familiar with the political source of

oppression, demonstrated in their actions against the Zamindar houses, their grain stocks, the moneylenders, and the merchants. At times the British state machinery, which came forward to protect these local agents of oppression, was also attacked. These characteristics were reflected in the peasant movements of the 20th century too.

(b) Tribal Uprising

Under colonial rule, for the first time in Indian history, government claimed a direct proprietary right over forests. The British rule and its encouragement of commercialisation of forest led to the disintegration of the traditional tribal system. It encouraged the incursion of tribal areas by the non-tribal people such as moneylenders, traders, land-grabbers, and contractors. This led to the widespread loss of adivasi land and their displacement from their traditional habitats.

Tribal resistance was therefore, a response against those who either introduced changes in the peaceful tribal life or took undue advantage of the innocence of the tribal people.

‘Tribes’ who are they?

The modern usage of word tribe in India restricts the definition to distinguish them (tribes) from the rest of the Indian society, a stratified system based on caste. Often the term is misused to refer to isolated groups. Tribes in India were and are very much part of the Indian society. They in fact have acted for long as part of Indian peasantry subsisting through shifting cultivation.

(i) Kol Revolt

One major tribal revolt, the Kol uprising of 1831-32, took place in Chota Nagpur and Singbhum region of Jharkhand and Orisa, under the leadership of Bindrai and Singhrail. The Raja of Chhota Nagpur had leased out to moneylenders the job of revenue collection. The usury and forcible eviction of tribals from

their land led to the resentment of Kols. The initial protest and resistance kols was in the form of plunder, arson and attacks on the properties of outsiders. This was followed by the killing of moneylenders and merchants. The tribal leaders adopted varied methods to spread their message such as the beating of drums and the circulation of arrows accompanied by a warning to all outsiders to leave.

Kols organised an insurrection in 1831-32, which was directed against government officers and moneylenders. The Kol rebels took control of the king's palace. They even succeeded in forming an independent government there. The British suppressed the rebellion with great violence.

(ii) Santhal Hool (Insurrection)

Santhals, scattered in various parts of eastern India, when forced to move out of their homeland during the process of creation of zamins under Permanent Settlement, cleared the forest area around the Rajmahal Hills. They were oppressed by the local police and the European officers engaged in the railway construction. Pushed out of their familiar habitat, the Santhals were forced to rely on the moneylenders for their subsistence. Soon they were trapped in a vicious circle of debt and extortion. Besides this, Santhals also felt neglected under the corrupt British administration and their inability to render justice to their legitimate grievances.

Outbreak

Around 1854 activities of social banditry led by a person named Bir Singh was reported from different places. These were directed against mahajans and traders. Following this Bir Singh was summoned to the zamindari court, where he was beaten up and humiliated. Bir Singh along with his friends retaliated by committing further dacoities on the mahajans and merchants. The repressive measures only angered the Santhals.



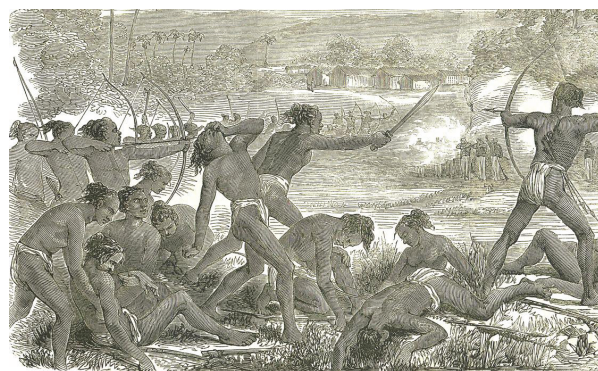
Sidhu



Kanu

In 1855, two Santhal brothers Sidhu and Kanu proclaimed that they had received a divine message from the God, asking them to lead the rebellion. On June 30, 1855 they announced that God has ordered them “to slaughter all the *mahajans* and *daroga*, to banish the traders and zamindars and all rich Bengalis from their country.... And to fight all who resisted them, for the bullets of their enemies would be turned into water”. Two Darogas (chief police officers) were killed by the santhal crowd.

By July 1855 the rebellion has taken the form of open insurrection against the mahajans, the zamindars and the British officials. They marched with bows, poisoned arrows, axes and swords taking over the Rajmahal and Bhagalpur by proclaiming that the Company rule was about to end. In response villages were raided and properties destroyed by the British. Nearly 15 to 25 thousand rebels were murdered before the insurrection was finally suppressed. These events compelled the British government to restructure their policies towards the tribal people. In 1855 an act was passed to regulate the territories occupied by the Santhals. The Act formed the territory into a separate division called Santhal Pargana division.



Santhal Rebellion

(c) Munda Rebellion

One of the prominent tribal rebellions of this period occurred in Ranchi, known as Ulugulan rebellion (Great Tumult). The Munda people were familiar with the co-operative or collective farming known as *Khuntkatti* (joint holding) land system. It was totally eroded by the introduction of private ownership of land and the intrusion of merchants and moneylenders. The Munda people were also forcefully recruited as indentured labourers to work on plantations. The corrupt police, lack of access to justice and the disillusionment with Christian missionaries aggravated the miseries of Munda people. In the 1890s tribal chiefs offered resistance against the alienation of tribal people from their land and imposition of *bethbegari* or forced labour.



Birsa Munda

The movement received an impetus when Birsa Munda declared himself as the messenger of God. Birsa claimed that he had a prophecy and promised supernatural solutions to the problem of Munda people and the establishment of *Birsait* Raj. The Munda leaders utilised the cult of Birsa Munda to recruit more people to their cause. A series of night meetings were held and a revolt was planned. On the Christmas day of 1889, they resorted to violence. Buildings were burnt down and arrows were shot at Christian missionaries and Munda Christian converts. Soon police stations and government officials were attacked. Similar attacks were carried out over the next few months. Finally the resistance was crushed and Birsa Munda was

arrested in February 1900 who later died in jail. Birsa Munda became a folk hero who is to this day celebrated in many folk songs. The Munda rebellion prompted the British to formulate a policy on Tribal land. The Chotanagpur Tenancy Act (1908) restricted the entry of non-tribal people into the tribal land.

7.2 The Great Rebellion of 1857

In 1857, British rule witnessed the biggest challenge to its existence. Initially, it began as a mutiny of Bengal presidency sepoy but later expanded to the other parts of India involving a large number of civilians, especially peasants. The events of 1857–58 are significant for the following reasons:

1. This was the first major revolt of armed forces accompanied by civilian rebellion.
2. The revolt witnessed unprecedented violence, perpetrated by both sides.
3. The revolt ended the role of the East India Company and the governance of the Indian subcontinent was taken over by the British Crown.

(a) Causes

1. Annexation Policy of British India

In the 1840s and 1850s, more territories were annexed through two major policies:

The Doctrine of Paramountcy. British claimed themselves as paramount, exercising supreme authority. New territories were annexed on the grounds that the native rulers were corrupt and inept.

The Doctrine of Lapse. If a native ruler failed to produce a biological male heir to the throne, the territory was to 'lapse' into British India upon the death of the ruler. Satara, Sambalpur, parts of the Punjab, Jhansi and Nagpur were annexed by the British through the Doctrine of Lapse.

2. Insensitivity to Indian Cultural Sentiments

There was always a suspicion among the people regarding British intentions. In 1806 the sepoys at Vellore mutinied against the new dress code, which prohibited Indians from wearing religious marks on their foreheads and having whiskers on their chin, while proposing to replace their turbans with a round hat. It was feared that the dress code was part of their effort to convert soldiers to Christianity.

Similarly, in 1824, the sepoys at Barrackpur near Calcutta refused to go to Burma by sea, since crossing the sea meant the loss of their caste.

The sepoys were also upset with discrimination in salary and promotion. Indian sepoys were paid much less than their European counterparts. They felt humiliated and racially abused by their seniors.

(b) The Revolt

The precursor to the revolt was the circulation of rumors about the cartridges of the new Enfield rifle. There was strong suspicion that the new cartridges had been greased with cow and pig fat. The cartridge had to be bitten off before loading (pork is forbidden to the Muslims and the cow is sacred to a large section of Hindus).



Mangal Pandey



Revolt at Meerut

On 29 March a sepoy named Mangal Pandey assaulted his European officer. His fellow soldiers refused to arrest him when ordered to do so. Mangal Pandey along

with others were court-martialled and hanged. This only fuelled the anger and in the following days there were increasing incidents of disobedience. Burning and arson were reported from the army cantonments in Ambala, Lucknow, and Meerut.

Bahadur Shah Proclaimed as Emperor of Hindustan

On 11 May 1857 a band of sepoys from Meerut marched to the Red Fort in Delhi. The *sepoys* were followed by an equally exuberant crowd who gathered to ask the Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah II to become their leader.

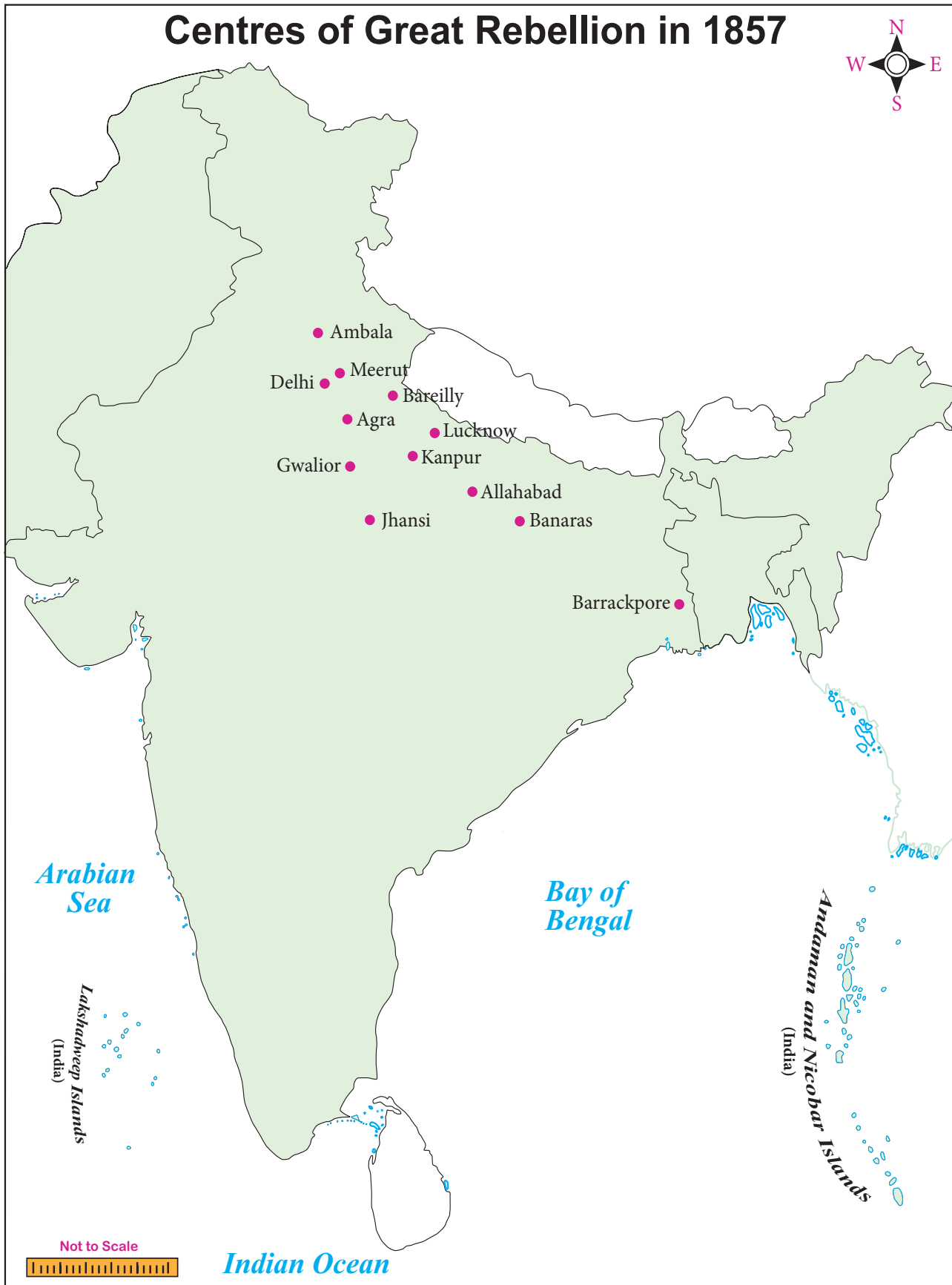


Bahadur Shah II

After much hesitation he accepted the offer and was proclaimed as the Shahenshah-e-Hindustan (the Emperor of Hindustan). Soon the rebels captured the north-western province and Awadh. As the news of the fall of Delhi reached the Ganges valley, cantonment after cantonment mutinied till, by the beginning of June, British rule in North India, except in Punjab and Bengal, had disappeared.

Civil Rebellion

The mutiny was equally supported by an aggrieved rural society of north India. Sepoys working in the British army were in fact peasants in uniform. They were equally affected by the restructuring of the revenue administration. The sepoy revolt and the subsequent civil rebellion in various parts of India had a deep-rooted connection with rural mass. The first civil rebellion broke out in parts of the North-Western provinces and Oudh. These were the two regions from which the *sepoys* were predominately recruited. A large number of Zamindars and Taluqdars were also attracted to the rebellions as they had lost their various privileges under the British government. The talukdar-peasant collective



was a common effort to recover what they had lost. Similarly, artisans and handicrafts persons were equally affected by the dethroning of rulers of many Indian states, who were a major source of patronage. The dumping of British manufactures had ruined the Indian handicrafts and thrown thousands of weavers out of employment. Collective anger against the British took the form of a people's revolt.



The Great Rebellion of 1857

Prominent Fighters against the British

The mutiny provided a platform to aggrieved kings, nawabs, queens, and zamindars to express the anti-British anger. Nana Sahib, the adopted son of the last Peshwa Baji Rao II, provided leadership in the Kanpur region. He had been denied pension by the Company. Similarly, Begum Hazrat Mahal in Lucknow and Khan Bahadur in Bareilly took the command of their respective territories, which were once ruled either by them or by their ancestors.

The siege of Kanpur was an important episode in the rebellion of 1857. The besieged Company forces and civilians in Kanpur were unprepared for an extended siege and surrendered to rebel forces under Nana Sahib, in return for a safe passage to Allahabad. The boats in which they were proceeding were burned and most of the men were killed, including British Commander of Kanpur Major General Hugh Wheeler.



Nana Sahib



Kanpur Massacre

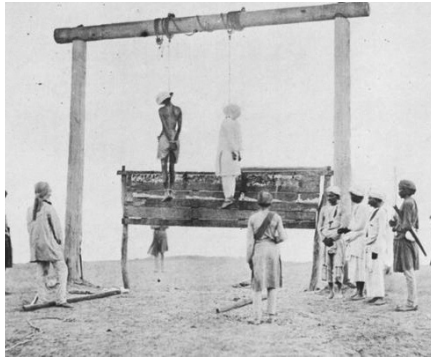
Another such significant leader was Rani Lakshmi Bai, who assumed the leadership in Jhansi. In her case Dalhousie, the Governor General of Bengal had refused her request to adopt a son as her successor after her husband died and the kingdom was annexed under the Doctrine of Lapse. Rani Lakshmi Bai battled the mighty British Army until she was defeated.

Bahadur Shah Jafar, Kunwar Singh, Khan Bahadur, Rani Lakshmi Bai and many others were rebels against their will, compelled by the bravery of the sepoys who had defied the British authority.

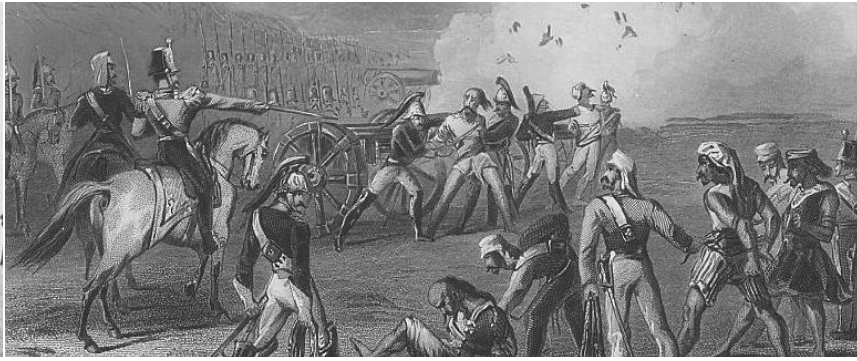
(c) Suppression of Rebellion

By the beginning of June 1857, the Delhi, Meerut, Rohilkhand, Agra, Allahabad and Banaras divisions of the army had been restored to British control and placed under martial law. The British officers were given the power to judge and take the life of Indians without due process of law.

William Howard Russell, the correspondent of the *London Times*, who was in India in 1858, met an officer who was a part of the column that under Colonel Neill's orders marched from Allahabad to Kanpur. The officer reported that 'in two days, 42 men were hanged on the roadside, and a batch of 12 men was executed because their faces were turned the wrong way when they were met on the march.' Even boys who had playfully flaunted rebel colours and beaten a tom-tom were not spared. Every Indian who appeared



**Hanging the rebels in
a public place**



**Blowing mutinous sepoys
from the guns**

in sight was shot or hung on the trees that lined the road; villages were burnt...'

(d) Causes of Failure

There is hardly any evidence to prove that the rebellion of 1857 was organised and planned. It was spontaneous. However, soon after the siege of Delhi, there was an attempt to seek the support of the neighboring states. Besides a few Indian states, there was a general lack of enthusiasm among the Indian princes to participate in the rebellion. The Indian princes and zamindars either remained loyal or were fearful of British power. Many a time they acted as a fifth column. Those involved in the rebellion were left with either little or no sources of arms and ammunition. The emerging English-educated middle class too did not support the rebellion.

One of the important reasons for the failure of the rebellion was the absence of a central authority. There was no common agenda that united the individuals and the aspirations of the Indian princes and the various other feudal elements fighting against the British.

In the end, the rebellion was brutally suppressed by the British army. The rebel leaders were defeated due to the lack of weapons, organisation, discipline, and betrayal by their aides. Delhi was captured by the British troops in late 1857. Bahadur Shah was captured and transported to Burma.

e) India Becomes a Crown Colony

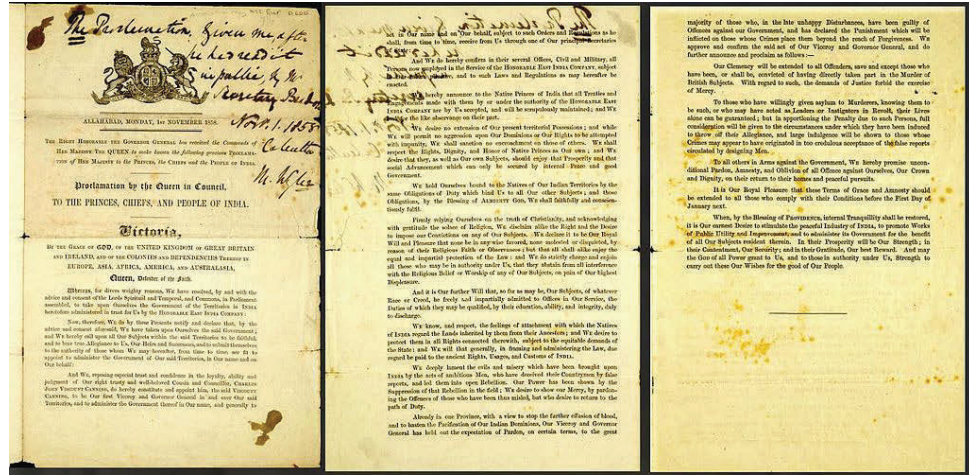
The British were shocked by the events of 1857. The British Parliament adopted the Indian Government Act, in November 1858, and India was pronounced as one of the many crown colonies to be directly governed by the Parliament. The responsibility was given to a member of the cabinet, designated as the Secretary of State for India. The transfer of power from the East India Company to the British Crown also meant that there was a regular parliamentary review of Indian affairs.

Changes in the Administration

British rule and its policies underwent a major overhaul after 1857. British followed a cautious approach to the issue of social reform. Queen Victoria proclaimed to the Indian people that the British would not interfere in traditional institutions and religious matters. It was promised that Indians would be absorbed in government services. Two significant changes were made to the structure of the Indian army. The number of Indians was significantly reduced. Indians were restrained from holding important ranks and position. The British took control of the artillery and shifted their recruiting effort to regions and communities that remained loyal during 1857. For instance, the British turned away from Rajputs, Brahmins and North Indian Muslims and looked towards non-Hindu groups like the Gorkhas, Sikhs, and Pathans. British also exploited the caste, religious, linguistic and



Queen Victoria



Queen Victoria's Proclamation

regional differences in the Indian society through what came to be known as “Divide and Rule” policy.

7.3 Peasant Revolts under Crown

(a) Indigo Revolt 1859-60

Before synthetic dyes were created, natural indigo dye was highly valued by cloth makers around the world. Many Europeans sought to make their fortunes by becoming indigo planters in India. They employed peasants to grow the indigo, which was processed into dye at the planters factories. The dye was then exported to Europe. By the early 19th century, India supplied the vast majority of the indigo to Britain. The system was oppressive. The peasants were forced to grow the crop. The British planter gave the cultivator a cash advance to help pay for the rent of the land and other costs. This advance needed to be repaid with interest. The planters forced the peasant grow indigo, rather than food crops. At the end of the season, the planters paid the cultivators low prices for their indigo. Moreover, the small amount the peasant earned was not enough to pay back the cash advance with interest. So they fell into debt. However, the peasants again would be forced to enter into another contract to grow indigo. The peasants were never able to clear their debts. Debts were often passed from father to son.

The Indigo Revolt began in 1859. The rebellion began as a strike, as the peasants of a village in Bengal's Nadia district refused to grow any more indigo. The movement quickly spread to the other indigo-growing districts of Bengal. The revolt then turned violent. The peasants, both Hindu and Muslim, participated in the revolt, and women—armed with pots and pans—fought alongside the men. Indian journalists in Calcutta wrote articles about the brutality of the planters. The 1860 play *Nil Darpan* (“Mirror of the Indigo”) by Dina Bandhu Mitra, did much to draw attention in India and Europe to the plight of the indigo growers.



Indigo Factory

The indigo industry quickly declined in Bengal. By the end of the 19th century, the demand for natural indigo dye began to decline worldwide, as man-made blue dyes came into use.

(b) Deccan Riots 1875

After the transfer of power to the Crown, deindustrialisation forced workers out of the land. Heavy taxation ruined agriculture. Famine deaths increased. The first recorded incident of rioting against the moneylenders in the Deccan was in May 1875, in Supa a village near Poona. Similar cases of riots were reported from close to 30 villages in Poona and Ahmadnagar. The rioting was directed mostly at the Gujarat moneylenders. Under British rule peasants were forced to pay revenue directly to the government. Also, under a new law moneylenders were allowed to attach the mortgaged land of the defaulters and auction it off. This resulted in a transfer of lands from the cultivators to the non-cultivating classes. Trapped in the vicious cycle of debt and unable to pay the outstanding amount the peasant was forced to abandon cultivation.

According to Anthropologist Kathlene Gough British rule brought ... disruption and suffering among the peasantry which was more prolonged and widespread than had occurred in Mughal times. Ranajit Guha writes, 'agrarian disturbances in many forms and on scales ranging from local riots to war-like campaigns spread over many districts were endemic throughout the first three quarters of British rule until the very end of the nineteenth century.'

7.4 The Foundation of Indian National Congress (1870 – 1885)

(a) Rise of Nationalism

The second half of the 19th century saw the emergence of national political consciousness among a new social class of English educated Indians. The Indian intelligentsia played a critical role in generating a national consciousness by exposing a large number of people to the idea of nation, nationalism

and various democratic aspirations. They articulated modern notions of citizenship, the idea of the state, civil society, human rights, equality before the law, liberty, the distinction between public and private, sovereignty, democracy and so on. The flourishing of print media both in the vernacular and in English played a significant role in circulating such ideas.

Even though they were numerically small they had a national character and capacity to establish contacts on an all India scale. They were working as lawyers, journalists, government employees, teachers or doctors. They took the initiative to float political outfits, such as Madras Native Association (1852) East India Association (1866), Madras Mahajana Sabha (1884), Poona Sarvajanik Sabha (1870), The Bombay Presidency Association (1885) and many others.

The British directed their policies to trample on the aspirations of Indians, who were exposed to English education and Western ideas and therefore had strong belief in modern values and institutions. However, the national consciousness in the late 19th century was also rooted in a glorification and celebration of Indian past, in which various religious and cultural symbols were used to kindle the patriotic zeal among the people.

(b) Economic Critique of Colonialism

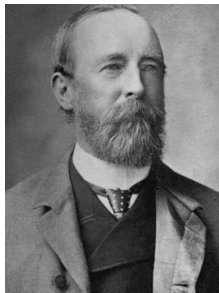
One of the most significant contributions of early Indian nationalists was the formulation of an economic critique of colonialism. India was economically subjugated and transformed into a supplier of raw material to the British industries. Simultaneously it became a market to dump English manufactures and for the investment of British capital. So the colonial economy was a continuous transfer of resources from India to Britain without any favourable returns back to India. This is called "the drain of wealth".



Dadabhai Naoroji, Justice Ranade, and Romesh Chandra Dutt, played a significant role in making this criticism about colonial economy. They clearly understood that the prosperity of the British lay in the economic and political subjugation of India. They concluded that colonialism was the main obstacle to the Indian's economic development.

(c) Objectives and Methods

The formation of the Indian National Congress in 1885 was intended to establish an all India organisation. It was the culmination of attempts by groups of educated Indians politically active in three presidencies: Bombay,



A.O. Hume

Madras, and Calcutta. A.O. Hume lent his services to facilitate the formation of the Congress. Womash Chandra Banarjee was the first President (1885) Indian National Congress.

The first session of the Indian National Congress was held on 28 December 1885. The early objectives were to develop and consolidate sentiments of national unity; but also professed loyalty to Britain. The techniques included appeals, petitions and delegations to Britain, all done within a constitutional framework. Some of the key demands were the following:

- creation of legislative councils at provincial and central level
- increasing the number of elected members in the legislative council
- separating judicial and executive functions
- reducing military expenditure
- reduction of Home Charges
- extension of trial by jury
- holding civil services exams in India as well as in England.
- police reforms
- reconsideration of forest laws
- promotion of Indian industries and an end to unfair tariffs and excise duties.

These show the vast gap between the interests of the upper sections of Indian society and the large mass of common people.

Question of Poverty

According to the early Congress leaders the economic exploitation of India was the primary reason for the abysmal and the growing poverty of India. Therefore, early Indian nationalists advocated industrialisation.

Militant Nationalism

The methods of moderate leaders failed to yield any substantive change in the British attitude towards the moderate demands of early Indian nationalists. They were criticised by a group of leaders known as “extremists”. Instead of prayers and petitions, these militants were more focused on self-help and the use of religious symbols to bridge the gap between the elite and the masses. The partition of Bengal gave a fillip to those who were advocating militant direct action programmes to fight the exploitative British policies.

7.5 Partition of Bengal

In 1899, Lord Curzon was appointed the Viceroy of India. Instead of engaging with the nationalist intelligentsia for handling the problem of famine and plague, Curzon resorted to repressive measures to undermine the idea



Lord Curzon

of local self-government, autonomy of higher educational institutions and gag the press. Partition of Bengal in 1905 was the most unpopular of all. The partition led to widespread protests all across India, starting a new phase of the Indian national movement.

The idea of partition was devised to suppress the political activities against the British rule in Bengal by creating a Hindu-Muslim divide.



(a) Hindu–Muslim Divide

It was openly stated that the objective of partition was to curtail Bengali influence and weaken the nationalist movement. By placing Bengal under two administrative units Curzon reduced the Bengali - speaking people to a linguistic minority in a divided Bengal. Curzon assured Muslims that in the new province of East Bengal Muslims would enjoy a unity, which they never enjoyed since the days of the Mughals.

Instead of dividing the Bengali people along the religious line partition united them. The growth of regional language newspapers played a role in building a sense of proud Bengali identity.

(b) Anti- Partition Movement

The leaders of both the groups - extremist and moderate - were critical of partition. Initially, the objective of the anti-partition campaign was limited to changing the public opinion in England. So they protested through prayers, press campaigns, petitions, and public meetings. However, despite widespread protest, partition of Bengal was announced on 19 July 1905.

With the failure to annul the partition moderate leaders were forced to rethink their strategy and look for new techniques of protest. The boycott of British goods was one such method. However, the agenda of Swadeshi Movement was still restricted to secure an annulment of partition and the moderates were very much against utilising the campaign to start a full-fledged passive resistance. The militant nationalists, on the other hand, were in favour of extending the movement beyond Bengal and to initiate a full-scale mass struggle.

The day Bengal was officially partitioned – 16 Oct 1905 – was declared as a day of mourning. Thousands of people took bath in the Ganga and marched on the streets of Calcutta singing Bande Mataram.

(c) Boycott and Swadeshi Movement in Bengal (1905–1911)

Boycott and swadeshi were always interlinked to each other and part of the wider plan to make India self-sufficient. Four



Swadeshi Movement

major trends can be discerned during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal.

1. **The Moderate Trend** – Faith in British rule and their sense of justice and democratic practice. The moderate leaders were not ready to wrest power from British in one single movement and therefore Boycott and Swadeshi Movement was of limited significance to them.
2. **Constructive Swadeshi** – Rejected the self-defeating modest approach of moderates and focused on self-help through swadeshi industries, national schools, arbitration courts and constructive programmes in the villages. It remained non-political in nature.
3. **Militant Nationalism** – A section of Indian nationalists who had little patience for the non-political constructive programmes. They ridiculed the idea of self-help and were more focused on a relentless boycott of foreign goods.
4. **Revolutionary terrorism** – A far more radical response to the British rule in India was to fight British with violent methods. British officials who were anti-swadeshi or repressive towards the native population were targeted. It also marked the shift from the mass-based movement to individual action.

Constructive Swadeshi

The constructive programmes largely stressed upon self-help. It focused on building alternative institutions of self-governance that would operate free of British control.

It also laid emphasis on the need of self-strengthening of the people which would help in creating a worthy citizen for the political agitation. Swadeshi shops sprang all over the place selling textiles, handlooms, soaps, earthenware, match and leather goods.

Passive Resistance

From 1906 the Swadeshi Movement took a turn where the repeal of partition was no longer on the agenda. For many leaders, the movement was to be utilized for propagating the idea of the political independence or Swaraj across India. Under this new direction, the swadeshi programme included four points: boycott of foreign goods, boycott of government schools and colleges, courts, titles and government services, development of Swadeshi industries, national schools, recourse to armed struggle if British repression went beyond the limits of endurance.

The method of passive resistance had no practical utility in a situation where there is a ruthless and mighty administration on the side and on the other the militarily weaker people. Resistance in such a situation can be provided through relentless non-cooperation and disobedience.

(d) Militant Nationalism



Lal-Bal-Pal

Lala Lajpat Rai of Punjab, Bala Gangadhar Tilak of Maharashtra and Bipin Chandra Pal of Bengal were three prominent leaders

during the Swadeshi period and were referred to as Lal-Bal-Pal triumvirate. Punjab, Bengal, and Maharashtra emerged as the hotbed of militant nationalism during the Swadeshi Movement. In South India Tuticorin became the most important location of Swadeshi activity with the launch of a Swadeshi Steam Navigation company by V.O. Chidambaranar.

Swaraj or Political Independence

One of the common goals of the extremist leaders was to achieve *Swaraj* or Self Rule. However, the leaders differed on the meaning of *Swaraj*. For Tilak *Swaraj* was the attainment of complete autonomy and total freedom from foreign rule. Unlike the moderates who were critical of the reckless revolutionaries, militant nationalists were sympathetic towards the extremists. However, the political murders and individual acts of terrorism were not approved by the militant leaders.

The British brutally crushed the Swadeshi Movement by jailing prominent leaders for long spells of imprisonment. Revolutionaries were hanged to death. The press was crushed.

7.6 Home Rule Movement (1916–1918)

The Indian national movement was revived and also radicalised during the Home Rule Movement (1916-1918), led by Lokamanya Tilak and Annie Besant. World War I and Indian's participation in it was the background for the Home Rule League. When Britain declared war against Germany in 1914, the moderate and liberal leadership extended their support to the British cause. It was hoped that, in return, the British government would give self-government after the war. Indian troops were sent to several theatres of World War. But the British administration remained non-committal to such goals. What was seen as a British betrayal to the Indian cause of self-government led to a fresh call for a mass movement to pressurise the British government.

(a) Towards Charting a Common Path

The 1916 Annual Session of Congress began with two significant developments. One, moderate leaders Pherozeshah Mehta and Gokhale, two main voices of opposition against the militant faction, had died in 1915. The rising popularity of Annie Besant was the other factor which compelled the moderates to put up a common front against the colonial government. In the Lucknow session of Indian National Congress (1916), it was decided to admit the militant faction into the party.

Tilak set up the first Home Rule League in April 1916. In September 1916, after repeated demands of her impatient followers, Annie Besant decided to start the Home Rule League without the support of Congress. Both the leagues worked independently. The Home Rule Leagues were utilised to carry extensive propaganda through, press, speeches, public meetings, lectures, discussions and touring in favour of self-government. They succeeded in enrolling young people in large numbers and extending the movement to the rural areas. The Home Rule Movement in India borrowed much of its principles from the Irish Home Rule Movement.

(b) Objectives of the Home Rule Movement

- To attain self-government within the British Empire by using constitutional means.

I mean by self-government that the country shall have a government by councils, elected by the people, elected with the power of the purse and the government is responsible to the house.... India should demand self-government not based on loyalty to the British government or as a reward for her services in the war but as a right based on the principle of national self-determination.

— Annie Besant (in September 1915)

- To obtain the status of dominion, a political position accorded later to Australia, Canada, South Africa, and New Zealand.
- To use non-violent constitutional methods to achieve their goals.

(c) Lucknow Pact (1916)

The Home Rule Movement and the subsequent reunion of moderate and the militant nationalists opened the possibility of fresh talks with the Muslims. Under the Lucknow Pact (1916), the Congress and the Muslim League agreed that there should be self-government in India as soon as possible. In return, the Congress leadership accepted the concept of separate electorate for Muslims.



Signatories of Lucknow Pact

(d) British Response

The response of the government of British India to the Home Rule Movement was not consistent. Initially it stated that there should be reform to accommodate more Indians in local administrative bodies. As the demand for Swaraj was raised by Tilak and Annie Besant that gained popularity, the British used the same old ploy to isolate the leaders by repressing their activities.

In 1919 the British government announced the Montagu-Chelmsford reforms which promised gradual progress of India towards self-government. This caused deep disappointment to Indian nationalists. In a further blow the government enacted what was called the Rowlatt Act which provided for arbitrary arrest and strict punishment.

SUMMARY

- The latter half of nineteenth century British India was replete with revolts of peasants and tribals against colonial political and economic domination.
- The great rebellion of 1857 was the culmination of various anti-British tendencies led by the depossessed feudal chieftains with an agenda to restore the Pre-colonial order.
- Even though the leaders of the Revolt lacked vision and were guided by local ambitions, it was a progressive act in terms of their effort to resist and challenge a despotic alien government.
- The Indian National Movement, building public opinion against the exploitative and oppressive British rule, inspired the younger generation to become part of the future militant anti-colonial struggles.
- The Swadeshi Movement helped to enhance the participation of masses in nationalist politics.
- The Home Rule Movement helped to unite the Congress party after the Surat split.
- The British mainly responded to the political activities of the nationalists in two ways. One was repression; other was reconciliation.
- The British utilised individual ambitions and personal rivalries to drive wedge between different social and religious groups to weaken the anti-colonial front.

A-Z GLOSSARY

orchestrated	organized to achieve a desired effect	நினைத்ததை நிறைவேற்ற போடப்பட்ட திட்டம்
clandestine	secret	இரகசிய
restorative	re-establishing	மீட்கின்ற
subletting	property leased by one lessee to another	கீழ்க்குத்தகைக்கு விடுதல், உள் குத்தகைக்கு விடுதல்
egalitarian	equal rights for all people	அனைத்து மக்களுக்கும் சமமான
coercive	forcible	வலுக்கட்டாயமாக
extortion	the practice of taking something from an unwilling person by physical force	தாக்குதல் மூலம் பணம், பொருள் பறித்தல்
disgruntled	dissatisfied, frustrated	நிறைவில்லாத, திருப்தியற்ற
abysmal	extremely bad, deep and bottomless	மிக மோசமான, படுபாதாளமான



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

- Which one of the following was launched by Haji Shariatullah in 1818 in East Bengal?
 - Wahhabi Rebellion
 - Farazi Movement
 - Tribal uprising
 - Kol Revolt
- Who declared that "Land belongs to God" and collecting rent or tax on it was against divine law?
 - Titu Mir
 - Sidhu
 - Dudu Mian
 - Shariatullah
- Who were driven out of their homeland during the process of creation of Zamins under Permanent Settlement?
 - Santhals
 - Titu Mir
 - Munda
 - Kol
- Find out the militant nationalist from the following.
 - Dadabhai Naoroji
 - Justice Govind Ranade
 - Bipin Chandra pal
 - Romesh Chandra
- When did the Partition of Bengal come into effect?
 - 19 June 1905
 - 18 July 1906
 - 19 August 1907
 - 16 October 1905
- What was the context in which the Chotanagpur Tenancy Act was passed?
 - Kol Revolt
 - Indigo Revolt
 - Munda Rebellion
 - Deccan Riots

- Who set up the first Home Rule League in April 1916?
 - Annie Basant
 - Bipin Chandra Pal
 - Lala Lajpat Rai
 - Tilak
- Who drew the attention of the British to the suffering of Indigo cultivation through his play *Nil darpan*?
 - Dina Bandhu Mitra
 - Romesh Chandra Dutt
 - Dadabhai Naoroji
 - Birsa Munda

II. Fill in the blanks

- In 1757, Robert Clive was financially supported by _____, the moneylenders of Bengal.
- _____ was an anti-imperial and anti-landlord movement which originated in and around 1827.
- The major tribal revolt which took place in Chotanagpur region was _____.
- The _____ Act, restricted the entry of non-tribal people into the tribal land.
- Around 1854 activities of social banditry were led by _____.
- The British Commander of Kanpur killed by the rebels during the 1857 Rebellion was _____.
- Chota Nagpur Act was passed in the year _____.
- W.C. Bannerjee was elected the president of Indian National Congress in the year _____.

III. Choose the correct statement

1. (i) The Company received ₹ 22.5 million from Mir Jafar and invested it to propel the industrial revolution in Britain.
(ii) Kols organized an insurrection in 1831-1832, which was directed against government officers and moneylenders.
(iii) In 1855, two Santhal brothers, Sidhu and Kanu, led the Santhal Rebellion.
(iv) In 1879, an Act was passed to regulate the territories occupied by the Santhals.
a) (i), (ii) and (iii) are correct
b) (ii) and (iii) are correct
c) (iii) and (iv) are correct
d) (i) and (iv) are correct
2. (i) Dudu Mian laid emphasis on the egalitarian nature of Islam and declared that "Land belongs to God"
(ii) According to the Doctrine of Lapse, new territories under the corrupt Indian rulers were to be annexed.
(iii) The British officials after the suppression of 1857 Revolt were given power to judge and take the lives of Indians without due process of law.
(iv) One of the causes of the failure of the Revolt of 1857 was many of the Indian princes and zamindars remained loyal to the British.
a) (ii), (iii) and (iv) are correct
b) (i), (ii) and (iv) are correct
c) (i), (iii) and (iv) are correct
d) (i), (ii) and (iii) are correct
3. (i) One of the most significant contributions of the early Indian Nationalists was the formulation of an economic critique of colonialism.
(ii) The early Congress leaders stated that the religious exploitation in India was the primary reason for the growing poverty.

- (iii) One of the goals of the moderate Congress leaders was to achieve Swaraj or self-rule.
- (iv) The objective of Partition of Bengal was to curtail the Bengali influence and weaken the nationalist movement.
a) (i) and (iii) are correct
b) (i), (iii), and (iv) are correct
c) (ii) and (iii) are correct
d) (iii) and (iv) are correct

4. **Assertion (A):** Under colonial rule, for the first time in Indian history, government claimed a direct proprietary right over forests.

Reason (R): Planters used intimidation and violence to compel farmers to grow indigo.

- a) Both (A) and (R) are correct, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- b) Both (A) and (R) are wrong
- c) Both (A) and (R) are correct and R is the correct explanation of A
- d) (A) is wrong and (R) is correct

5. **Assertion (A):** The Revolt of 1857 was brutally suppressed by the British army.

Reason (R): The failure of the rebellion was due to the absence of Central authority.

- a) Both (A) and (R) are wrong
- b) (A) is wrong and (R) is correct
- c) Both (A) and (R) are correct and R is the correct explanation of A
- d) Both (A) and (R) are correct, but R is not the correct explanation of A

IV. Match the following

1. Wahhabi Rebellion - Lucknow
2. Munda Rebellion - Peshwa Baji Rao II
3. Begum Hazarat Mahal - Titu Mir
4. Kunwar Singh - Ranchi
5. Nana Sahib - Bihar



V. Answer the following questions briefly

1. How are the peasant uprisings in British India classified?
2. Write about the Kanpur Massacre of 1857.
3. Name the territories annexed by the British under the Doctrine of Lapse.
4. What do you mean by drain of wealth?
5. Explain the concept of constructive swadeshi?
6. Highlight the objectives of Home Rule Movement.
7. Summarise the essence of Lucknow Pact.

VI. Answer all the questions under each caption

1. Deccan Riots
 - a) When and where did the first recorded incident of rioting against the moneylenders in the Deccan appear?
 - b) What was the right given to moneylenders under a new law of the British?
 - c) What did it result in?
 - d) Against whom was the violence directed in the Deccan riots.
2. The Revolt of 1857
 - a) Who assaulted his officer, an incident that led to the outbreak of 1857 Revolt?
 - b) Who was proclaimed the *Sahhensha-e-Hindustan* in Delhi?
 - c) Who was the correspondent of *London Times* who reported on the brutality of the 1857 revolt?
 - d) What did the Queen's proclamation say on matters relating to religion?
3. Indian National Congress
 - a) What were the techniques adopted by the Congress to get its grievances redressed?
 - b) What do you know of Lal-Bal-Pal triumvirate?

- c) Where was the first session of Indian National Congress held?
- d) How did the British respond to the Swadeshi Movement?

VII. Answer in detail

1. Discuss the causes and consequences of the Revolt of 1857?
2. How did the people of Bengal respond to the Partition of Bengal (1905)?
3. Attempt a narrative account of how Tilak and Annie Besant by launching Home Rule Movement sustained the Indian freedom struggle after 1916?

VIII. Activity

1. Identify the Acts passed in British India from 1858 to 1919, with a brief note on each.
2. Mark the important centres of 1857 Revolt on an outline map.
3. Prepare an album with pictures of frontline leaders of all the anti-colonial struggles launched against the British.



REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Bipan Chandra, *India's Struggle for Independence* (New Delhi: Penguin, 2000)
2. Sekhar Bandyopadhyay, *From Plassey to Partition and After* (New Delhi: Orient Longman, 2004)
3. Sumit Sarkar, *Modern India (1885-1947)* (New Delhi: Pearson, 2014).



ICT CORNER

Anti-Colonial Movements and the Birth of Nationalism

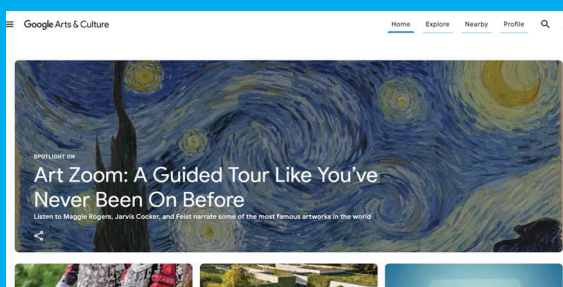
Through this activity
you will visualize the
Great Rebellion of 1857



Step-1 Open the Browser and type the URL given below (or) Scan the QR Code.

Step-2 Type 'Rebellion of 1857' into search box

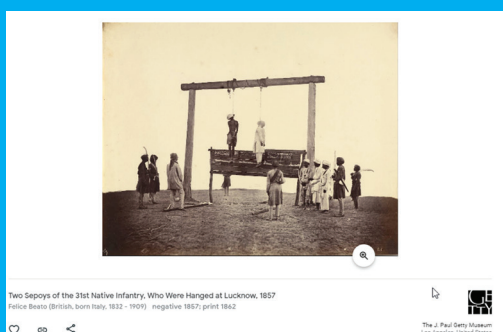
Step-3 Scroll down and click explore the picture collections



Step-1



Step-2



Step-3

* Pictures are indicatives only.

* If browser requires, allow Flash Player or Java Script to load the page



B376_10_SOCIAL_EM

Unit - 8

Nationalism: Gandhian Phase



Learning Objectives

To acquaint ourselves with

- Gandhian phase of India's struggle for independence
- Gandhi's policy of ahimsa and satyagraha tried and tested for mobilisation of the masses in India
- Non-violent struggles in Champaran and against the Rowlatt Act
- The Non-Cooperation Movement and its fallout
- Emergence of radicals and revolutionaries and their part in the freedom movement
- Launch of Civil Disobedience Movement
- Issue of separate electorate and the signing of Poona Pact
- First Congress Ministries in the provinces and circumstances leading to the launch of Quit India Movement
- Communalism leading to partition of sub-continent into India and Pakistan



Introduction

Mahatma Gandhi arrived in India in 1915 from South Africa after fighting for the civil rights of the Indians there for about twenty years. He brought with him a new impulse to Indian politics. He introduced satyagraha, which he had perfected in South Africa, that could be practiced by men and women, young and old. As a person dedicated to the cause of the poorest of the poor, he instantly gained the goodwill of the masses. Before Gandhi, the constitutionalists appealed to the British sense of justice and fair play. The militants confronted the repression of the colonial state violently. Gandhi, in contrast, adopted non-

violent methods to mobilise the masses and mount pressure on the British. In this lesson we shall see how Gandhi transformed the Indian National Movement.

8.1 Gandhi and Mass Nationalism

(a) Evolution of Gandhi

Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi was born on 2 October 1869 into a well to do family in Porbandar, Gujarat. His father Kaba Gandhi was the Diwan of Porbandar and later became the Diwan of Rajkot. His mother Putlibai, a devout Vaishnavite, influenced the young

Gandhi. After passing the matriculation examination, Gandhi sailed to England in 1888 to study law. After becoming a barrister in June 1891 Gandhi returned to India as a firm believer in British sense of justice and fair play. His experiences in London had not prepared him for the racial discrimination he would encounter in South Africa.



Gandhi in South Africa

On returning to India, Gandhi's attempt to practice in Bombay failed. It was during this time that a Gujarati firm in South Africa, sought the services of Gandhi for assistance in a law-suit. Gandhi accepted the offer and left for South Africa in April 1893. Gandhi faced racial discrimination for the first time in South Africa. On his journey from Durban to Pretoria, at the Pietermaritzburg railway station, he was physically thrown out of the first class compartment. Indians were treated only as coolies. But Gandhi was determined to fight.

Gandhi called a meeting of the Indians in the Transvaal and exhorted them to form an association to seek redress of their grievances. He continued to hold such meetings, petitioned to the authorities about the injustices which were in violation of their own laws. Indians in the Transvaal had to pay a poll tax of £ 3, could not own land except in areas marked for them, and could not move

outdoors after 9 p.m. without a permit. He launched a struggle against such unjust laws.

Gandhi was introduced to the works of Tolstoy and John Ruskin. He was deeply influenced by Tolstoy's *The Kingdom of God is Within You*, Ruskin's *Unto this Last* and Thoreau's *Civil Disobedience*. Gandhi's ideas were formed due to a blend of Indian and Western thought. Despite being deeply influenced by Western thinkers he was highly critical of Western civilisation and industrialisation. Inspired by Ruskin Gandhi established the Phoenix Settlement (1905) and the Tolstoy Farm (1910). Equality, community living and dignity of labour were inculcated in these settlements. They were training grounds for the satyagrahis.

Satyagraha as a Strategy in South Africa

Gandhi developed satyagraha (devotion to the truth, truth-force) as a strategy, in which campaigners went on peaceful marches and presented themselves for arrest in protest against unjust laws. He experimented with it for fighting the issues of immigration and racial discrimination. Meetings were held and registration offices of immigrants were picketed. Even when the police let loose violence no resistance was offered by the satyagrahis. Gandhi and other leaders were arrested. Indians, mostly indentured labourers turned hawkers continued the struggle despite police brutality. Finally, by the Smuts-Gandhi Agreement the poll tax on indentured labourers was abolished. Gandhi's stay in South Africa was a learning experience for him. It was there that Gandhi realised that people of different religions, regions, linguistic groups could be welded into one to fight against exploitation. After the outbreak of the First World War, Gandhi returned to India.

8.2 Gandhi's Early Satyagrahas in India

Gandhi regarded Gopal Krishna Gokhale, whom he had met on previous visits to India, as his political guru. On his advice, Gandhi travelled the length and breadth of the country before plunging into politics. This enabled him to understand the conditions of the people. It is on one of these journeys through Tamil Nadu that Gandhi decided to discard his following robes and wear a simple dhoti. Gandhi before returning to India visited England where he enlisted for the War to offer ambulance services. Considering himself a responsible citizen of the Empire he believed it was his duty to support England in its difficult times and even campaigned for the recruitment of Indians in the army. However, his views changed over the years.

(a) Champaran Satyagraha



Champaran Satyagraha

In Champaran in Bihar the *tinkathia* system was practiced. Under this exploitative system the peasants were forced by the European planters to cultivate indigo on three-twentieths of their land holdings. Towards the end of nineteenth century German synthetic dyes had forced indigo out of the market. The European planters of Champaran, while realising the necessity of relieving the cultivators of the obligation of cultivating indigo, wanted to turn the situation to their advantage. They enhanced the rent and collected illegal dues as a price for the release of cultivators from the obligation. Resistance erupted. Rajkumar Shukla, an agriculturist

from Champaran who suffered hardships of the system, prevailed on Gandhi to visit Champaran. On reaching Champaran, Gandhi was asked by the police to leave immediately. When he refused he was summoned for trial. The news spread like wild fire and thousands swarmed the place in support of Gandhi. Gandhi pleaded guilty of disobeying the order, and the case had to be finally withdrawn. According to Gandhi, "The country thus had its first object-lesson in Civil Disobedience". He was assisted by Brajkishore Prasad, a lawyer by profession, and Rajendra Prasad, who became the first President of independent India. The Lieutenant Governor eventually formed a committee with Gandhi as a member which recommended the abolition of the *tinkathia* system, thereby ending the oppression of the peasants by the Indigo Planters.

The success of Champaran satyagraha, followed by his fruitful intervention in Ahmedabad mill strike (1918) and the Kheda Satyagraha (1918) helped Gandhi establish himself as a leader of mass struggle. Unlike earlier leaders, Gandhi demonstrated his ability to mobilise the common people across the country.

(b) Rowlatt Satyagraha and Jallianwala Bagh Massacre

In the aftermath of the First World War, people expected liberal political reforms from the British. The Government of India Act 1919, however, caused disappointment, as it did not transfer real power to the Indians. Besides, the government began to enforce the permanent extension of war time restrictions. The Rowlatt Act was enacted which provided for excessive police powers, arrest without warrant and detention without trial. Gandhi called it a 'Black Act' and in protest called for a nation-wide satyagraha on 6 April 1919. It was to be a non-violent struggle with fasting and prayer, and it was the earliest anti-colonial struggle spread across the country. The anti-Rowlatt protest was intense in Punjab, especially in Amritsar and Lahore.

Gandhi was arrested and prevented from visiting Punjab. On 9 April two prominent local leaders Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlew and Dr. Satyapal were arrested in Amritsar leading to protests in which a few Europeans were killed. Martial law was declared.

General Dyer's Brutality

On 13 April 1919 a public meeting was arranged at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar. As it happened to be Baisaki day (spring harvest festival of Sikhs) the villagers had assembled there in thousands. General Reginald Dyer, on hearing of the assemblage, surrounded the place with his troops and an armoured vehicle. The only entrance to the park that was surrounded on all sides by high walls was blocked, and firing took place without any warning. The firing lasted for ten minutes till the troops ran out of ammunition. According to official estimates 379 were killed and more than thousand injured. Unofficial estimates put the toll at more than a thousand. After the incident martial law was declared and many people in the Punjab especially Amritsar were flogged and forced to crawl on the streets.

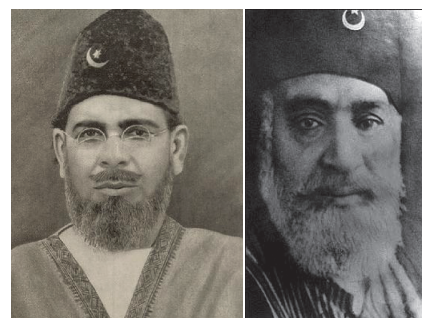


Bullet marks on the wall and the well in the ground, Jallianwala Bagh

The brutality enraged Indians. Rabindranath Tagore returned his knighthood. Gandhi surrendered his Kaiser-i-Hind medal.

(c) Khilafat Movement

The First World War came to an end in 1918. The Caliph of Turkey, who was considered the head of Muslims of the world, was given a harsh treatment. A movement was started in his support called the Khilafat Movement. Led by the Ali brothers, Maulana Mohamed Ali and Maulana Shaukat Ali, it aimed to restore the prestige and power of the Caliphate. Gandhi supported the movement and saw in it an opportunity to unite Hindus and Muslims. He presided over the All India Khilafat Conference held at Delhi in November 1919. Gandhi supported Shaukat Ali's proposal of three national slogans, Allaho Akbar, Bande Mataram and Hindu-Muslim Unity. The Khilafat Committee meeting in Allahabad on 9 June 1920 adopted Gandhi's non-violent non-cooperation programme. Non-Cooperation was to begin on 1 August 1920.



Ali Brothers

8.3 Non-Cooperation Movement and Its Fallout

The Indian National Congress approved the non-cooperation movement in a special session held in Calcutta on September 1920. It was subsequently passed in the Nagpur Session held on December 1920, Chaired by Salem C. Vijayaraghavachariar. The programme of non-cooperation included:

1. Surrender of all titles of honours and honorary offices.
2. Non-participation in government functions.

3. Suspension of practice by lawyers, and settlement of court disputes by private arbitration.
4. Boycott of government schools by children and parents.
5. Boycott of the legislature created under the 1919 Act.
6. Non-participation in government parties and other official functions.
7. Refusal to accept any civil or military post.
8. Boycott of foreign goods and spreading the doctrine of Swadeshi.

(a) No-Tax Campaign and Chauri Chaura Incident

Programmes such as no-tax campaigns caught the imagination of the kisans (peasants). Gandhi announced a no-tax campaign in Bardoli in February 1922. These movements greatly enhanced Gandhi's reputation as a national leader, especially the peasants. Gandhi made a nation-wide tour. Wherever he visited there was a bonfire of foreign cloth. Thousands left government jobs, students gave up their studies in large numbers and the lawyers gave up thriving practices. Boycott of British goods and institutions were effective. The boycott of the Prince of Wales' visit to India was successful. During this boycott trade unions and workers participated actively. However, Gandhi suddenly withdrew the movement because of the Chauri Chaura incident.

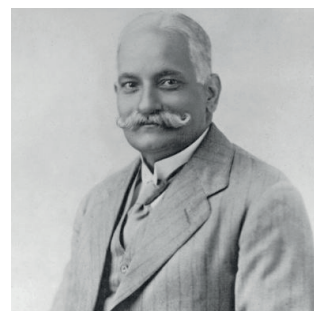
On 5 February 1922 a procession of the nationalists in Chauri Chaura, a village near Gorakhpur in present-day Uttar Pradesh provoked by the police turned violent. The police finding themselves outnumbered shut themselves inside the police station. The mob burnt the police station 22 policemen lost their lives. Gandhi immediately withdrew the movement. This was done much against the wishes of many congressmen including young leaders like Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose who thought the movement was gaining momentum. Gandhi was arrested and was released only in 1924. Gandhi believed that the movement failed not because of any defect in the means employed,

viz. non-violent non-cooperation but because of lack of sufficiently trained volunteers and leaders. Soon after the Khilafat Movement also came to an end as the office of the Caliph (Caliphate) was abolished in Turkey.

(b) Swarajists



C.R. Das



Motilal Nehru

Meanwhile Congress was divided into two groups viz. pro-changers and no-changers. Some of the Congressmen led by Motilal Nehru and C.R. Das wanted to contest the elections and enter the legislature. They argued that the national interest could be promoted by working in the Legislative Councils under Dyarchy and wrecking the colonial government within. They were called the pro-changers. Staunch followers of Gandhi like Vallabhbhai Patel, C. Rajaji and others, known as no-changers, wanted to continue non-cooperation with the government. Despite the opposition C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru formed the Swaraj Party on 1 January 1923, which was later approved by a special session of the Congress. Swaraj Party members were elected in large numbers to the Imperial Legislative Assembly and the various Provincial Legislative Councils. They effectively used the legislature as a platform for propagation of nationalist ideas. In Bengal, they refused to take charge of transferred subjects, as they did not want to cooperate with the government. They exposed the true nature of the colonial government. However, the Swaraj Party began to decline after the death of its leader C.R. Das in 1925. Some of the Swaraj Party members began to accept government offices. Swaraj Party withdrew from the legislatures in 1926.

Dyarchy, a system of dual government introduced under the Government of India Act 1919, divided the powers of the provincial government into Reserved and Transferred subjects. The Reserved Subjects comprising finance, defence, the police, justice, land revenue, and irrigation were in the hands of the British. The Transferred Subjects that included local self-government, education, public health, public works, agriculture, forests and fisheries were left under the control of Indian ministers. The system ended with the introduction of provincial autonomy in 1935.

(c) Constructive Programme of Gandhi

After the Chauri Chaura incident, Gandhi felt that the volunteers and the people had to be trained for a non-violent struggle. As a part of this effort he focused on promoting Khadi, Hindu-Muslim unity and the abolition of untouchability. He exhorted the Congressmen, "Go throughout your districts and spread the message of Khaddar, the message of Hindu-Muslim unity, the message of anti-untouchability and take up in hand the youth of the country and make them the real soldiers of Swaraj." He made it compulsory for all Congress members to wear khaddar. The All India Spinner's Association was formed. Gandhi believed that without attaining these objectives Swaraj could never be attained.

Despite the cooperation of the Hindus and Muslims during the Khilafat Movement and the Non-Cooperation Movement, the unity was fragile. The 1920s saw a series of communal riots between the Hindus and the Muslims. Hindu Mahasabha was gaining in popularity under Madan Mohan Malaviya and the Muslim League under the Ali Brothers. Gandhi undertook a 21-day a fast in between 1924 to appeal to the hearts of the Hindus and Muslims involved in communal politics. Serious efforts by Gandhi and Muhammad Ali Jinnah, who at

that time believed Swaraj was possible only with Hindu-Muslim unity, failed to stem the communal riots.

(d) Boycott of Simon Commission

On 8 November 1927, the British Government announced the appointment of the Indian Statutory Commission. Composed of seven members headed by Sir John Simon it came to be widely known as the Simon Commission. It was an all-white commission with no Indian member. Indians were angered that they had been denied the right to decide their own constitution. All sections of India including the Congress and the Muslim League decided to boycott the commission. Wherever the Commission went there were protests, and black flag marches with the slogan 'Go Back Simon'. The protesters were brutally assaulted by the police. In one such assault in Lahore, Lal Lajpat Rai was seriously injured and died a few days later.



"Go back Simon" Demonstration

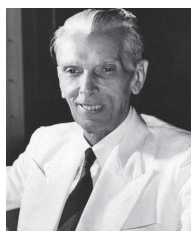
(e) Nehru Report

The Simon boycott united the different political parties in India. An all party conference was held in 1928 with the objective to frame a constitution for India as an alternative to the Simon Commission proposals. A committee under the leadership of Motilal Nehru was formed to outline the principles on the basis of which the constitution was to be drafted. The committee's report, known as the Nehru Report, recommended,

- Dominion status for India.
- Elections of the Central Legislature and the Provincial Legislatures on the basis of joint and mixed electorates.

- Reservation of seats for Muslims in the Central Legislature and in provinces where they are in a minority and for the Hindus in North-West Frontier Province where they were in a minority.
- Provision of fundamental rights, and universal adult franchise.

Jinnah proposed an amendment to the reservation of seats in the Central Legislature. He demanded that one-third of the seats be reserved for Muslims. Tej Bahadur Sapru supported him and pleaded that



Jinnah

it would make no big difference. However, it was defeated in the All Party Conference. Later he proposed a resolution which came to be known as Jinnah's Fourteen Points. However, it was also rejected. Jinnah who was hailed as Ambassador of Hindu-Muslim Unity thereafter changed his stand and began to espouse the cause of a separate nation for Muslims.

8.4

The Struggle for Poorna Swaraj and Launch of Civil Disobedience Movement

Meanwhile some congressmen were not satisfied with dominion status and wanted to demand complete independence. In the Congress session held in Lahore in December 1929 with Jawaharlal Nehru as the President, Poorna Swaraj was declared as the goal. It was also decided to boycott the Round Table Conference and launch a Civil Disobedience Movement. 26 January 1930 was declared as Independence Day and a pledge was taken all over the country to attain Poorna Swaraj non-violently through civil disobedience including non-payment of taxes. The Indian National Congress authorised Gandhi to launch the movement.

(a) Salt Satyagraha Movement

A charter of demands presented to the Viceroy Lord Irwin with an ultimatum to comply by 31 January 1930 included:

- Reduction of expenditure on army and civil services by 50%
- Introduction of total prohibition
- Release of all political prisoners
- Reduction of land revenue by 50%
- Abolition of salt tax.



Gandhiji's Dandi March

When the Viceroy did not respond to the charter of demands, Gandhi launched the Civil Disobedience Movement. The inclusion of abolition of salt tax was a brilliant tactical decision. Salt was an issue which affected every section of the society. It transformed Civil Disobedience Movement into a mass movement drawing all sections of the population including women to the streets. At the break of dawn on 12 March 1930 Gandhi set out from Sabarmati Ashram with 78 of its inmates. The procession became larger and larger when hundreds joined them along the march. At the age of 61 Gandhi covered a distance of 241 miles in 24 days to reach Dandi at sunset on 5 April 1930. The next morning, he took a lump of salt breaking the salt law.

Salt Satyagraha in Provinces



Rajaji making salt in Vedaranyam

In Tamil Nadu, C. Rajaji led a similar salt march from Tiruchirappalli to Vedaranyam. Salt marches took place in Kerala, Andhra and Bengal. In the North West Frontier Province Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan led

the movement. He organized the Khudai Khidmatgar, also known as the Red Shirts. Government crushed the movement with brutal force, causing in many casualties. The soldiers of the Garhwali regiment refused to fire on unarmed satyagrahis.

Gandhi was arrested at midnight and sent to Yeravada Jail. Jawaharlal Nehru, Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan and other leaders were swiftly arrested. Soon other forms of protests such as boycott of foreign cloth,

The British enacted the first forest act in 1865. This act restricted the access of the forest dwellers to the forest areas to collect firewood, cattle fodder and other minor forest produce such as honey, seeds, nuts, medicinal herbs. The Indian Forest Act of 1878 claimed that original ownership of forests was with the state. Waste lands and fallow lands were included as forest. Sifting cultivation practiced by the tribal people, was prohibited. Alienation of forests from local control was stiffly resisted by the aggrieved adivasis (tribals) and the nationalists.

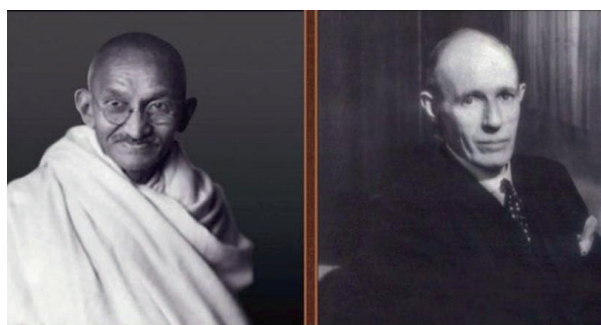
The most striking evidence of continuing struggles of the tribal groups was the one waged by Alluri Sitarama Raju in Rampa. Raju made Adivasi areas in the Eastern Ghats (the forest area along the Visakapatnam and Godavari district) his home. The Adivasis who were organized by Alluri Sitarama Raju lived in abject poverty. They were also harassed by police, forest and revenue officials in 'Manyam' (forest area). Raju's efforts at fighting corrupt officials to protect the interests of Rampa tribals prompted the British to target his life. A special Malabar Police team was sent to quell the uprisings (1922-24) of Rampa Adivasis. Alluri Sitarama Raju attained martyrdom for the cause of forest dwellers.

picketing of liquor shops, non-payment of taxes, breaking of forest laws etc. were adopted. Women, peasants, tribals, students, even children and all sections participated in the nation-wide struggle. It was the biggest mass movement India had ever witnessed. More than 90,000 people were arrested.

(b) Round Table Conferences

In the midst of the movement the First Round Table Conference was held at London in November 1930. Ramsay Macdonald, the British Prime Minister, proposed a federal government with provincial autonomy. There was a deadlock over the question of separate electorates for the minorities. The Congress did not attend it as its leaders were in jail. The Conference closed without any decision on the question. It was clear that without Congress participation the discussions were of no value. Gandhi was released unconditionally.

(c) Gandhi-Irwin Pact



Gandhi

Irwin

Lord Irwin held talks with Gandhi which resulted in the Gandhi-Irwin Pact on 5 March 1931. The British agreed to the demand of immediate release of all political prisoners not involved in violence, return of confiscated land and lenient treatment of government employees who had resigned. It also permitted the people of coastal villages to make salt for consumption and non-violent picketing. The Congress agreed to suspend the Civil Disobedience Movement and attend the conference. Gandhi attended the Second Round Table Conference which began

on 7 September 1931. Gandhi refused to accept separate electorates for minorities. As a result, the second conference ended without any result.



Second Round Table Conference - London

(d) Renewal of Civil Disobedience Movement.

On returning to India, Gandhi revived the Civil Disobedience Movement. This time the government was prepared to meet the resistance. Martial law was enforced and Gandhi was arrested on 4 January 1932. Soon all the Congress leaders were arrested too. Protests and picketing by the people were suppressed with force. Nearly 80,000 people were arrested within four months. The nationalist press was completely gagged. Despite Government's repressive measures it is worth mentioning here that the movement continued till April 1934.

In the meantime, the Third Round Table Conference was held from 17 November to 24 December 1932. The Congress did not participate in the conference as it had revived the Civil Disobedience Movement.



Call for Civil Disobedience

(e) Communal Award and Poona Pact

On 16 August 1932, Ramsay MacDonald, announced the Communal Award. It provided separate electorates to the minorities, viz. Muslims, Sikhs, Indian Christians, Anglo-Indians and women and the "depressed classes". Gandhi strongly opposed the inclusion of depressed classes in the list of minorities. Gandhi argued that it would not only divide the Hindus but also make the campaign against untouchability meaningless, as they would be considered distinct from the Hindus. However, he supported reservation of seats. B.R. Ambedkar, the leader of the depressed classes, strongly argued for the separate electorate, as it, according to him, would give them political representation and power. On 20 September 1932, Gandhi went on a fast unto death against the separate electorates for the depressed classes. Madan Mohan Malaviya, Rajendra Prasad and others held talks with Ambedkar and M.C. Rajah the leaders of the depressed classes. After intense negotiations an agreement was arrived between Gandhi and Ambedkar. Known as the Poona Pact, its main terms were:

- The principle of separate electorates was abandoned. Instead, the principle of joint electorate was accepted with reservation of seats for the depressed classes.
- Reserved seats for the depressed classes were increased from 71 to 148. In the Central Legislature 18 percent of the seats were reserved.

(f) Campaign Against Untouchability

Gandhi devoted the next few years towards abolition of untouchability. His engagement with Dr. B.R. Ambedkar made a big impact on his ideas about the caste system. He shifted his base to the Satyagraha



Dr. B.R. Ambedkar

Ashram at Wardha. He undertook an all-India tour called the Harijan Tour. He started the Harijan Sevak Sangh to work for the removal of discriminations. He worked to promote education, cleanliness and hygiene and giving up of liquor among the depressed class. He also undertook two fasts in 1933 for this cause. An important part of the campaign was the Temple Entry Movement. 8 January 1933 was observed as 'Temple Entry Day'. His campaign earned the ire of the orthodox Hindus and an attempt was made on his life by obscurantists upper caste Hindus. But this did not deter his mission. The work among the depressed classes and the tribals took the message of nationalism to the grassroots.

8.5 Beginnings of Socialist Movements

Inspired by the Russian Revolution of 1917 the Communist Party of India (CPI) was founded at Tashkent, Uzbekistan in October 1920. M.N. Roy, Abani Mukherjee, and M.P.T. Acharya were some of its founding members. The British government in India made vigorous efforts to suppress the communist movement by foisting a series of cases in the 1920s. In a further attempt to eliminate the threat of communism M.N. Roy, S.A. Dange, Muzaffar Ahmed, M. Singaravelar among others were arrested and tried in the Kanpur Conspiracy Case of 1924. The charge on them was "to deprive the King Emperor of his sovereignty of British India, by complete separation of India from imperialistic Britain."

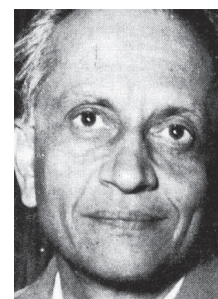
(a) Foundation of Communist Party

The communists used it as a platform to propagate their views and to expose the 'true colour of British rule in India'. In an attempt to form a party an All India



M.N. Roy

Communist Conference was held at Kanpur in 1925. Singaravelar gave the Presidential Address. It led to the founding of the Communist Party of India in Indian soil. The Communists organised workers' and peasants' organisations in different parts of India. A number of strikes were organised in the 1920s. Their efforts eventually led to the establishment of the All India Workers' and Peasants' Party in 1928. The progress in this direction was halted with the Meerut Conspiracy Case in 1929. Muzaffar Ahamed, S.A. Dange, S.V. Ghate, G. Adhikari, P.C. Joshi, S.S. Mirajkar, Shaukat Usmani, Philip Stratt and twenty-three others were arrested for organising a railway strike. They were charged with conspiring to overthrow the British government of India.



S.A. Dange

(b) Revolutionary Activities

The youths who were disillusioned with the sudden withdrawal of the Non Cooperation Movement by Gandhi took to violence. In 1924 Hindustan Republican Army (HRA) was formed in Kanpur to overthrow the colonial rule by an armed rebellion. In 1925 Ram Prasad Bismil, Ashfaqulla Khan and others held up a train carrying government money and looted in Kakori, a village near Lucknow. They were arrested and tried in the Kakori Conspiracy Case. Four of them were sentenced to death while the others were sentenced to imprisonment.



Bhagat Singh

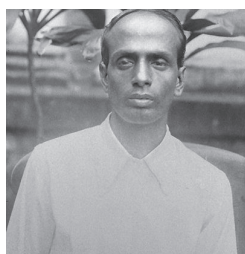
Rajguru

Sukhdev

Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev and their comrades reorganized the HRA in Punjab.

Influenced by socialist ideas they renamed it as Hindustan Socialist Republican Association in 1928. Sanders, a British police officer, responsible for the lathi charge that led to Lala Lajpat Rai's death was assassinated. Bhagat Singh along with B.K. Dutt threw a smoke bomb inside the Central Legislative Assembly in 1929. It was not intended to hurt anyone. They threw pamphlets and shouted 'Inquilab Zindabad' and 'Long Live the Proletariat'. He along with Rajguru was arrested and sentenced to death. Bhagat Singh's daring and courage fired the imagination of the youth across India, and he became popular across India. During the Gandhi-Irwin negotiations there was wide-spread demand to include the case of Bhagat Singh and Rajguru. The Viceroy was not willing to commute the death sentence.

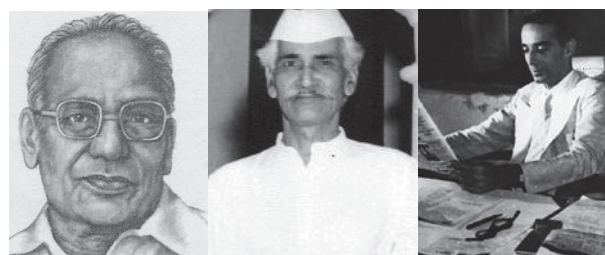
In April 1930, the Chittagong Armoury Raid was carried out by Surya Sen and his associates. They captured the armories in Chittagong and proclaimed a provisional revolutionary government. They survived for three years raiding government institutions. In 1933 Surya Sen was caught and hanged after a year.



Surya Sen

(c) Left Movement in the 1930s

By the 1930s the Communist Party of India had gained strength in view of the economic crisis caused by world-wide Great Depression. Britain transmitted the effects of Depression to its colonies. The effects of Depression were reflected in decline in trade returns and fall in agricultural prices. The governmental measures included forcible collection of land revenue which in real terms had increased two-fold due to a 50% fall in agricultural prices, the withdrawal of money in circulation, retrenchment of staff and expenditure on developmental works.



Jayaprakash Narayan

Acharya Narendra Dev

Minoo Masani

In this context, the Communist Party, fighting for the cause of peasants and industrial workers hit by loss of income and wage reduction, and problems of unemployment gained influence and was therefore banned in 1934. The Congress, as a movement with a wide spectrum of political leanings, ranging from the extreme Left to the extreme Right, welded together by the goal of Swaraj, emerged as a powerful organisation. There was a constant struggle between the right and left in the Congress during the 1930s. In 1934 the Congress Socialist Party was formed by Jayaprakash Narayan, Acharya Narendra Dev and Minoo Masani. They believed that nationalism was the path to socialism and that they would work within the Congress. They worked to make Congress pro-peasant and pro-worker.

'Real Swaraj will come not by acquisition of authority by a few, but by the acquisition of the capacity by all to resist authority, when abused.'

- M. K. Gandhi

8.6

First Congress Ministries under Government of India Act, 1935

The Government of India Act 1935 was one of the important positive outcomes of the Civil Disobedience Movement. The key features of the Act were provincial autonomy and dyarchy at the centre. The Act provided for an all India Federation with 11 provinces, 6 Chief commissioner's provinces and all those Princely states which wished to join the federation. The Act also provided autonomy

to the provinces. All the subjects were transferred to the control of Indian ministers. Dyarchy that was in operation in provinces was now extended to the central government. The franchise, based on property, was extended though only about ten percent of the population enjoyed the right to vote. By this Act Burma was separated from India.

(a) Congress Ministries and their Work

The Government of India Act 1935 was implemented with the announcement of elections in 1937. The Congress immensely benefitted because of the Civil Disobedience Movement. The Congress called off its programme of boycott of legislature and contested elections. It emerged victorious in seven out of the eleven provinces. It formed ministries in 8 provinces – Madras, Bombay, Central Provinces, Orissa, Bihar, United Provinces, North West Frontier Province. In Assam it formed a coalition government with Assam Valley Muslim Party led by Sir Muhammad Sadullah. The Congress Ministries functioned as a popular government and responded to the needs of the people. The salaries of ministers were reduced from Rs. 2000 to Rs. 500 per month. Earlier action taken against nationalists were rescinded. They repealed the Acts which vested emergency powers in the government, lifted the ban imposed on political organisations except the Communist Party, and removed the restrictions on the nationalist press. Police powers were curbed and reporting by the CID on political speeches discontinued. Legislative measures were adopted for reducing indebtedness of the peasantry and improving the working conditions of the industrial labour. Temple entry legislation was passed. Special attention was paid to education and public health.

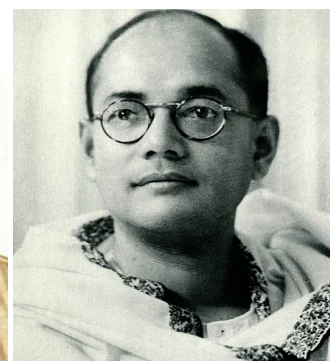
(b) Resignation of Congress Ministries

In 1939 the Second World War broke out. The colonial government of India

entered the War on behalf of the Allies without consulting the Congress ministries. The Congress ministries resigned in protest. Jinnah who had returned from London with the determination of demanding separate state for Muslims, revived the Muslim League in 1934. He was one of the staunchest critics of the Congress Ministries. He declared the day when the Congress Ministries resigned as the 'Day of Deliverance'. By 1940 he was demanding a separate state for the Muslims arguing that in an independent India the Muslims would lose all political power to the Hindus.

(c) National Movement during the Second World War, 1939–45

In 1939 Subhas Chandra Bose became the President of the Congress by defeating Pattabhi Sitaramayya, the candidate of Gandhi. When Gandhi refused to cooperate, Subhas Chandra Bose resigned his post and started the Forward Bloc. The Communists initially opposed the War, calling it an imperialist war. However, with the Nazi attack on the Soviet Union, they called it the 'People's War' and offered cooperation to the British. As a result, in 1942, the ban on the Communist Party of India was lifted.



Pattabhi Sitaramayya Subhas Chandra Bose

8.7 Hindu Communalism, Muslim Communalism and Indian Nationalism

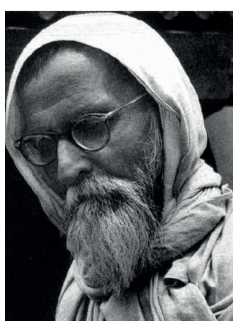
The Muslim League dubbed the Congress as a Hindu organisation and claimed that it alone was the representative of the Muslims

of India. Similarly, the Hindu Mahasabha and the Rashtriya Swayamsevak Sangh (RSS) took a pronounced anti-Muslim stance. Both Hindu Mahasabha and Muslim League claimed that the interests of the Hindus and Muslim were different and hostile to each other. The British policy of divide and rule, through measures such as Partition of Bengal, Communal Award, had encouraged the vested interests out to exploit the religious differences. In 1933, Rahmat Ali a student of Cambridge University conceived the idea of Pakistan, comprising the provinces of Punjab, Kashmir, North West Frontier Province, Sind and Baluchistan. Muhammad Iqbal, who was advocating Hindu-Muslim unity later changed his stance and began to campaign for the formation of a separate state for Muslims. Indian Nationalism represented by Gandhi, Nehru, Vallabhbhai Patel and others opposed the idea of partitioning the country.

8.8 Developments leading to Quit India Movement

(a) Individual Satyagraha

In August 1940 Viceroy Linlithgow made an offer in return for Congress' support for the war effort. However, the offer of dominion status in an unspecified future was not acceptable to the Congress. However, it did not want to hamper the British during its struggle against the fascist forces of Germany and Italy. Hence Gandhi declared limited satyagraha which would be offered by a few individuals. The objective was to convey to the world that though India was opposed to Nazism it did not enter the War voluntarily. Vinobha Bhave was the first to offer satyagraha on 17 October 1940. The satyagraha continued till the end of the year. During this period more than 25,000 people were arrested.



Vinobha Bhave

(b) Cripps Mission

On 22 March 1942, the British government sent a mission under Cabinet Minister Sir Stafford Cripps as the Japanese knocked on the doors of India. The negotiations between the Cripps Mission and the Congress failed as Britain was not willing to transfer effective power immediately. The Cripps Mission offered:



Cripps and Gandhi

1. Grant of Dominion Status after the War
2. Indian Princes could sign a separate agreement with the British implying the acceptance for the demand of Pakistan.
3. British control of defence during the War.

Both the Congress and the Muslim League rejected the proposal. Gandhi called the proposals as a post-dated cheque on a crashing bank.

(c) "Do or Die" Call by Gandhi



Quit India Movement; "Do or Die" - a call by Gandhi

The outcome of the Cripps Mission caused considerable disappointment. Popular discontent was intensified by war time shortages and steep rise in prices. The All India Congress Committee that met at Bombay on 8 August 1942 passed the famous Quit India Resolution demanding an immediate end to British rule in India. Gandhi gave a call to do or die. Gandhi said, 'We shall either free India or die in the attempt; we shall not live to see the perpetuation of our slavery.' A non-violent mass struggle

under Gandhi was to be launched. But early next morning on 9 August 1942 Gandhi and the entire Congress leadership was arrested.

(d) Role of Socialists

With Gandhi and other prominent leaders of the Congress in jail, the Socialists provided the leadership for the movement. Jayaprakash Narayan and Ramanand Misra escaped from prison and organised an underground movement.



Aruna Asaf Ali

Women activists like Aruna Asaf Ali played a heroic role. Usha Mehta established Congress Radio underground which successfully functioned till November 1942. British used all its might to suppress the revolt. Thousands were killed with machine guns and in some cases airplanes were used to throw bombs. Collective fines were imposed and collected with utmost rigour. Gandhi commenced a twenty-one day fast in February 1943 which nearly threatened his life. Finally, the British government relented. Gandhi was released from jail in 1944.

(e) People's Response

As news spread to different parts of India, a spontaneous protest broke out everywhere. The people protested in whatever form that they could, such as hartals, strikes, picketing. The government suppressed it with brute force. People attacked government buildings, railway stations, telephone and telegraph lines and all that stood as symbols of British authority. This was particularly widespread in Madras. Parallel governments were established in Satara, Orissa, Bihar, United Provinces and Bengal.

Though the movement was suppressed, it demonstrated the depth of nationalism and the readiness of the people to sacrifice for it. Nearly 7000 people were killed and

more than 60,000 jailed. Significantly it also demonstrated the weakening of the colonial hegemony over the state apparatus. Many officials including policemen helped the nationalists. Railway engine drivers and pilots transported bombs and other materials for the protestors.

(f) Subhas Chandra Bose and INA



Subhas Chandra Bose's INA

Subhas Chandra Bose who had left the Congress was now under house arrest. He wanted to strike British hard by joining its enemies. In March 1941, he made a dramatic escape from his house in disguise and reached Afghanistan. Initially he wanted to get the support of Soviet Union. After the Soviet Union joined the Allied Powers which included Great Britain, he went to Germany. In February 1943, he made his way to Japan on a submarine and took control of the Indian National Army. The Indian National Army Captain Lakshmi Sahgal headed it (Azad Hindu Fauj) had earlier been organized by Gen. Mohan Singh with Indian prisoners of war with the support of Japanese in Malaya and Burma. Bose reorganised it into three brigades: Gandhi Brigade, Nehru Brigade and a women's brigade named after Rani of Jhansi. Subhas Chandra Bose formed the Provisional Government of Free India in Singapore. He gave the slogan 'Dilli Chalo'. INA was deployed as part of the Japanese forces. However, the defeat of Japan stopped the advance of INA. The airplane carrying Subhas Chandra Bose crashed bringing to an end his crusade for freedom.

The British government arrested the INA officers and put them on trial in the Red Fort. The trial became a platform for nationalist propaganda. The Congress set up a defence committee comprising Nehru, Tej Bahadur Sapru, Bhulabhai Desai and Asaf Ali. Though the INA officers were convicted they were released due to public pressure. The INA exploits and the subsequent trials inspired the Indians.



8.9 Towards Freedom

(a) Royal Indian Navy Revolt



Royal Indian Navy Revolt

The Royal Indian Navy ratings revolted at Bombay in February 1946. It soon spread to other stations involving more than 20,000 ratings. Similar strikes occurred in the Indian Air Force and the Indian Signal Corps at Jabalpur. Thus the British hegemonic control ceased even in the armed forces. Despite the victory in the War, it left the British completely weakened. British surrender in South-East Asia to the Japanese was a big blow to imperial prestige. All the political leaders were released and the ban on Congress was lifted.

(b) Negotiating Independence: Simla Conference

The Wavell Plan was announced on 14 June 1945. It provided for an interim government, with an equal number of Hindus

and Muslims in the Viceroy's Executive Council. All portfolios, except war portfolio, was to be held by Indian ministers. However, in the Shimla Conference, the Congress and the Muslim League could not come to an agreement. Jinnah demanded that all the Muslim members should be from the Muslim League and they should have a veto on all important matters. In the provincial elections held in early 1946 the Congress won most of the general seats and the Muslim League won most of the seats reserved for the Muslims thus bolstering its claim.

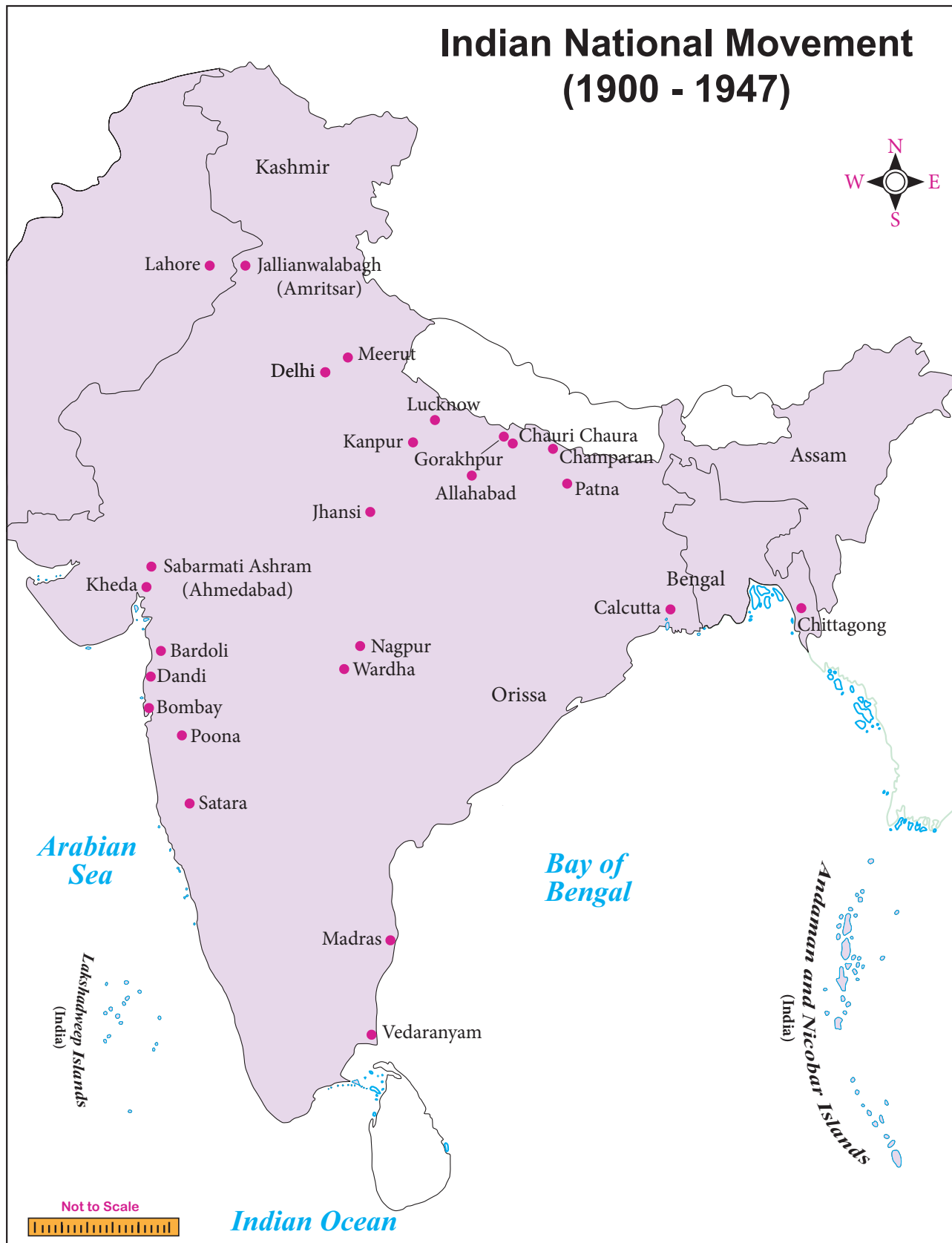
(c) Cabinet Mission



LORD WAVELL [VICEROY] WITH MEMBERS OF CABINET MISSION [MARCH '46]
[L. TO R.] A. V. Alexander, Lord Pethick-Lawrence, Lord Wavell & Sir Stafford Cripps

Cabinet Mission

In Britain, the Labour Party had won a landslide victory and Clement Atlee became the Prime Minister. He declared that he wanted to transfer power at the earliest. He sent a Cabinet Mission comprising Pethick Lawrence, Sir Stafford Cripps and A.V. Alexander. Rejecting the demand for Pakistan, it provided for a Federal government with control over defence, communications and foreign affairs. The provinces were divided into three groups viz. Non-Muslim Majority Provinces, Muslim Majority Provinces in the Northwest and the Muslim Majority Provinces in the Northeast. A Constituent Assembly was to be elected and an interim government set up with representation for all the communities. The Congress and the Muslim League accepted the plan. However, both interpreted it differently. The Congress



wanted the division of the provinces to be temporary while the Muslim League wanted it to be a permanent arrangement.

(d) Direct Action Day Call by Muslim League

Difference arose between Congress and Muslim League when the former nominated a Muslim member. The League argued it was to be the sole representative of the Muslims and withdrew its approval. Jinnah declared 16 August 1946 as the 'Direct Action Day'. Hartals and demonstrations took place which soon turned into Hindu-Muslim conflict. It spread to other districts of Bengal. The district of Noakhali was the worst affected. Gandhi left for the worst affected regions and toured them on barefoot bringing the communal violence under control and spreading the message of peace and non-violence.

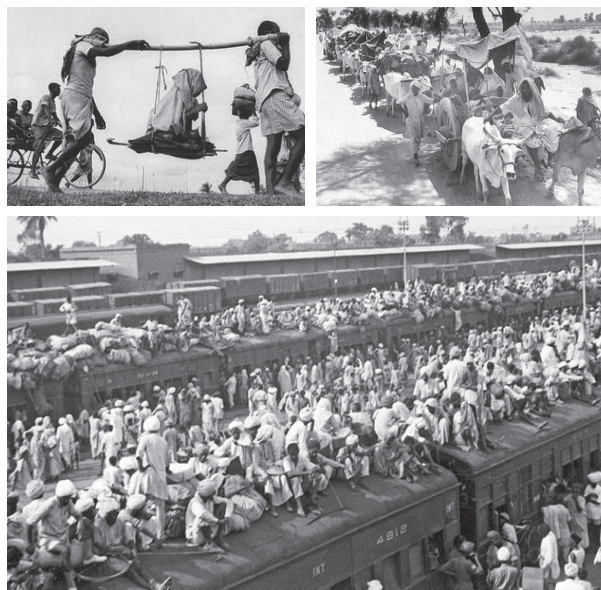
(e) Mountbatten Plan

The interim government headed by Jawaharlal Nehru was formed in September 1946. After some hesitation the Muslim League joined it in October 1946. Its representative Liaquat Ali Khan was made the Finance Member. In February 1947, Clement Atlee declared that power would be transferred by June 1948. Lord Mountbatten was sent as Viceroy to India with the specific task of transfer of power. On 3 June 1947 the Mountbatten Plan was announced. It proposed:

- Power would be transferred on the basis of dominion status to India and Pakistan.
- Princely states would have to join either India or Pakistan.
- Boundary commission was to be set up under Radcliffe Brown and the award would be announced after the transfer of power.
- Punjab and Bengal Legislative Assemblies would vote on whether they should be partitioned.

(f) Independence and Partition

The Mountbatten Plan was given effect by the enactment of the Indian Independence Act on 18 July 1947 by the British Parliament. The Act abolished the sovereignty of the British Parliament over India. India was partitioned into two dominions – India and Pakistan. On 15 August 1947 India won independence.



Arrival of refugees in the wake of Partition

SUMMARY

- Gandhiji's experiments with truth, ahimsa and satyagraha in South Africa and his evolution as a mass leader are explained.
- His call for Non-Cooperation, Civil Disobedience and Quit India Movements and the fallout of these mass struggles in the form of legislation such as Government of India Act, 1919 and Government of India Act, 1935 and Independence Act, 1947 are detailed.
- Role played by Socialists and Communists and Revolutionaries represented by Bhagat Singh, Subhas Chandra Bose and outcome of their activities are highlighted.
- Use of religion for political mobilisation by Hindu Mahasabha and Muslim League leading to partition is discussed.

A-Z GLOSSARY

satyagraha	passive political resistance advocated by Mahatma Gandhi	அறப்போர், சத்தியாகிரகம்
constitutionalist	adherent of constitutional methods	அரசியல் சட்ட விதிகளைப் பின்பற்றுபவர்
discrimination	unjust or differential treatment of different categories of people, especially on grounds of caste, creed, etc	ஜாதி, கொள்கை போன்றவற்றின் அடிப்படையில் வேறுபாடு காட்டுகிற
coolie	native labourers emigrating under Indentured labour system	கூலியாள்
massacre	an indiscriminate and brutal slaughter of many people	படுகொலை
non-cooperation	failure or refusal to cooperate, especially as a form of protest	ஒத்துழையாமை
exhort	strongly encourage or urge to do something	வற்புறுத்து, நற்செயலுக்கேவு
communalism	allegiance to one's own ethnic, religious or caste group rather than to wider society	வகுப்புவாதம்
dominion	self-governing territory	தன்னாட்சியுரிமையுடைய குடியேற்ற நாடு
electorate	all the people in a country or area who are entitled to vote in an election	வாக்காளர் தொகுதி
ultimatum	a final demand or statement of terms	கடைசி அறிவிப்பு, இறுதி எச்சரிக்கை
alienation	Isolation	தனிமைப்படுத்தல்
negotiation	discussion aimed at reaching an agreement	ஒப்பந்தம் பேசுதல், பேச்சுவார்த்தை
conspiracy	a secret plan by a group to do something unlawful or harmful	கூட்டுச்சதி செய்தல், சதித்திட்டம்
provincial Autonomy	self-government in the provinces	மாகாண சுயாட்சி



EXERCISE

I. Choose the correct answer



- Who was arrested during the anti-Rowlatt protests in Amritsar?
 - Motilal Nehru
 - Saifuddin Kitchlew
 - Mohamed Ali
 - Raj Kumar Shukla
- In which session of the Indian National Congress was Non-Cooperation approved?
 - Bombay
 - Madras
 - Lucknow
 - Nagpur

- Which among the following was declared as 'Independence Day'?
 - 26th January 1930
 - 26th December 1929
 - 16th June 1946
 - 15th January 1947
- When was the first Forest Act enacted?
 - 1858
 - 1911
 - 1865
 - 1936
- On 8 January 1933 which day was observed _____?
 - Temple Entry Day
 - Day of Deliverance
 - Direct Action Day
 - Independence Day



6. Which Act introduced Provincial Autonomy?
 - a) 1858 Act
 - b) Indian Councils Act, 1909
 - c) Government of India Act, 1919
 - d) Government of India Act, 1935
7. Who defeated Pattabhi Sitaramaya, Gandhi's candidate, and became the President of the Congress in 1939?
 - a) Rajendra Prasad
 - b) Jawaharlal Nehru
 - c) Subhas Chandra Bose
 - d) Maulana Abul Kalam Azad
8. Where was Gandhi when India attained independence on 15th August 1947?
 - a) New Dehi
 - b) Ahmedabad
 - c) Wardha
 - d) Noakhali

II. Fill in the blanks

1. Gandhi was thrown out of the first class compartment in _____ station.
2. Gandhi regarded _____ as his political guru.
3. Khilafat Movement was led by _____.
4. Government of India Act 1919 introduced _____ in the provinces.
5. The Civil Disobedience Movement in North West Frontier Province was led by _____.
6. Ramsay Macdonald announced _____ which provided separate electorates to the minorities and the depressed classes.
7. _____ established Congress Radio underground during the Quit India Movement.
8. _____ coined the term 'Paksitan'.

III. Choose the correct statement

1. (i) The Communist Party of India was founded in Tashkent in 1920.
(ii) M. Singaravelar was tried in the Kanpur Conspiracy Case.
(iii) The Congress Socialist Party was formed by Jayaprakash Narayan, Acharya Narendra Dev and Mino Masani.
(iv) The Socialists did not participate in the Quit India Movement.
 - a) (i) and (ii) are correct
 - b) (ii) and (iii) are correct
 - c) (iv) is correct
 - d) (i), (ii) and (iii) are correct
2. (i) Hindustan Republican Army was formed in Kanpur in 1924.
(ii) Ram Prasad Bismil was tried in the Kakori Conspiracy Case.
(iii) Hindustan Socialist Republican Association was formed by Surya Sen.
(iv) Chittagong Armoury Raid was carried out by B.K. Dutt.
 - a) (i) and (ii) are correct
 - b) (i) and (iii) are correct
 - c) (iii) is correct
 - d) (iii) and (iv) are correct
3. **Assertion:** The Congress attended the First Round Table Conference.
Reason: Gandhi-Irwin Pact enabled the Congress to attend the Second Round Table Conference.
 - a) Both A and R are correct but R is not the correct explanation
 - b) A is correct but R is wrong
 - c) A is wrong but R is correct
 - d) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation
4. **Assertion:** The Congress Ministries resigned in 1939.
Reason: The Colonial government of India entered the war without consulting the elected Congress ministries.



- a) Both A and R are correct but R is not the correct explanation
- b) A is correct but R is wrong
- c) Both A and R are wrong
- d) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation

IV. Match the Following

- 1. Rowlatt Act - Surrender of titles
- 2. Non Cooperation Movement - Dyarchy
- 3. Government of India Act, 1919 - M.N. Roy
- 4. Communist Party of India - Direct Action Day
- 5. 16th August 1946 - Black Act

V. Answer the following briefly

- 1. Describe the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre.
- 2. Write a note on the Khilafat Movement.
- 3. Why did Gandhi withdraw the Non Cooperation Movement?
- 4. What was the conflict between the Swarajists and no-changers?
- 5. Why was Simon Commission boycotted?
- 6. What is Poorna Swaraj?
- 7. Write a note on Bhagat Singh.
- 8. What are the terms of the Poona Pact?

VI. Answer all the questions given under each caption

- 1. Gandhi and Mass nationalism
 - a) Which incident is considered a turning point in the life of Gandhi?
 - b) Name the works that influenced Gandhi?
 - c) How did Gandhi use satyagraha as a strategy in South Africa?
 - d) What do you know about the Champaran Satyagraha?
- 2. Constructive Programme of Gandhi
 - a) What is constructive programme?
 - b) What did Gandhi exhort the Congressmen to do?
 - c) How did Gandhi try to bring about Hindu-Muslim unity?

- d) What is the contribution of Gandhi towards abolition of untouchability?

3. Subhas Chandra Bose and INA

- a) How did Subhas Chandra Bose reach Japan?
- b) Who headed the women wing of Indian National Army?
- c) How did Subhas Chandra Bose reorganize the INA?
- d) Name the slogan provided by Subhas Chandra Bose.

VII. Answer in detail.

- 1. Examine the factors that led to the transformation of Gandhi into a mass leader.
- 2. Critically examine the Civil Disobedience Movement as the typical example of Gandhian movement.
- 3. Discuss the reasons behind the partition of India.

VIII. Activity

- 1. Students can be asked to mark the important places of Gandhian Movement in a map and write a sentence or two about what happened there.
- 2. Students can be divided into groups and asked to debate the views of Gandhi, Jinnah, B.R. Ambedkar, Revolutionaries and Communists.



REFERENCE BOOKS

- 1. Bipan Chandra, *History of Modern India*, Orient BlackSwan, 2016.
- 2. Bipan Chandra, Amal Tripathi and Barun De, *Freedom Struggle*, NBT, 1993.
- 3. Bipan Chandra, *et al.*, *India's Struggle for Independence*, Penguin Books, 1989.
- 4. Sumit Sarkar, *Modern India, 1885-1947*, Pearson, 2014.
- 5. Sekhar Bandyopadhyay, *From Plassey to Partition*, Orient BlackSwan, 2013.
- 6. B.R. Nanda, *Mahatma Gandhi: A Biography*, Oxford University Press, 1958.



ICT CORNER

Nationalism Gandhian Phase

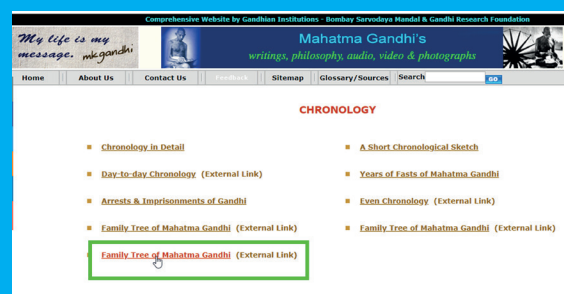
Through this activity you will learn about Highlights in the life of Mahatma Gandhi.



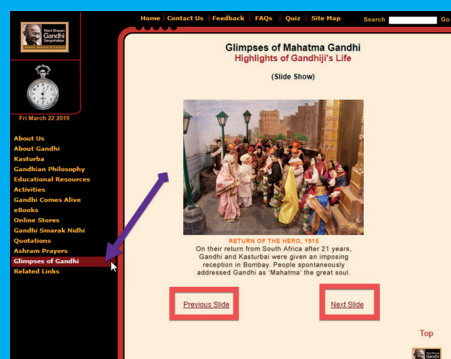
- Step-1** Open the Browser and type the URL given below (or) Scan the QR Code.
- Step-2** Click on 'Chronology/Time line' and Select 'Family tree of Mahatma Gandhi'
- Step-3** Click on 'Glimpses of Gandhi' in the Left side menu and click on 'Next or Previous' to see events in life of Gandhi



Step-1



Step-2



Step-3

- * Pictures are indicatives only.
- * If browser requires, allow Flash Player or Java Script to load the page



B376_10_SOCIAL_EM

Unit - 9

Freedom Struggle in Tamil Nadu



Learning Objectives

To acquaint ourselves with:

- Anti-colonial struggles in Tamil Nadu
- Contribution of Christian missionaries to the development of education and amelioration of the depressed classes
- Challenge of the Justicites to the Congress in Tamil Nadu
- Militant mass movement of the Congress in Tamil Nadu



Introduction

Tamil Nadu showed the lead in resisting colonial rule. As early as the late eighteenth century the Palayakarars, resisted the English attempts to establish their political hegemony in Tamil Nadu. Even after the defeat of the Palayakarars, an uprising was organised by Indian sepoys and officers in Vellore Fort in 1806 that had its echoes in several cantonments in south India. Thanks to the introduction of Western education and eventual emergence of educated Indian middle class, the struggle against the British took the constitutional path. The freedom struggle in Tamil Nadu was unique, because from the beginning it was not only a struggle for independence from the English rule but also a struggle for independence from social disability imposed by the obnoxious caste system. In this lesson we shall study the role played by nationalists wedded to diverse ideologies in Tamil Nadu.

9.1 Early Nationalist Stirrings in Tamil Nadu

By the middle of the nineteenth century a group of educated middle class emerged in Madras and began to show interest in public affairs. As in other parts of India, they formed political associations, such as the Madras Native Association and the Madras Mahajana Sabha to articulate their grievances.

(a) Madras Native Association

The Madras Native Association (MNA) was the earliest organisation to be founded in south India to articulate larger public rather than sectarian interests. It was started by Gazulu Lakshminarasu, Srinivasanar and their associates in 1852. It consisted primarily of merchants. The objective was to promote the interests of its members and their focus was on reduction in taxation. It also protested against the support of the government to Christian missionary activities. It drew the attention of the government to the condition and needs

of the people. One of the important contributions of the MNA was its agitation against torture of the peasants by revenue officials. These efforts led to the establishment of the Torture Commission and the eventual abolition of the Torture Act, which justified the collection of land revenue through torture. However, by 1862, the Madras Native Association had ceased to exist.



**Gazalu
Lakshminarasu**

(b) Beginnings of the Nationalist Press: The Hindu and Swadesamitran



T. Muthuswami



G. Subramaniam

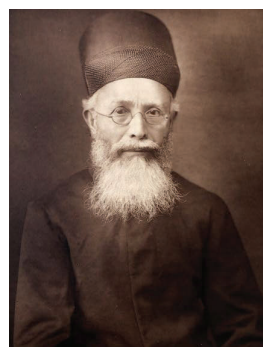
The appointment of T. Muthuswami as the first Indian Judge of the Madras High Court in 1877 created a furore in Madras Presidency. The entire press in Madras criticized the appointment of an Indian as a Judge. The press opposed his appointment and the educated youth realized that the press was entirely owned by Europeans. The need for a newspaper to express the Indian perspective was keenly felt. G. Subramaniam, M. Veeraraghavachari and four other friends together started a newspaper *The Hindu* in 1878. It soon became the vehicle of nationalist propaganda. G. Subramaniam also started a Tamil nationalist periodical *Swadesamitran* in 1891 which became a daily in 1899. The founding of *The Hindu* and *Swadesamitran* provided encouragement to the starting of other native newspapers such as *Indian Patriot*, *South Indian Mail*, *Madras Standard*, *Desabhimani*, *Vijaya*, *Suryodayam* and *India*.

(c) Madras Mahajana Sabha

Madras Mahajana Sabha (MMS) was the earliest organisation in south India with clear nationalist objectives. It was the training ground for the first generation of nationalist leaders. On 16 May 1884 MMS was started by M. Veeraraghavachari, P. Anandacharlu, P. Rangaiah and few others. P. Rangaiah became its first president. P. Anandacharlu played an active role as its secretary. The members met periodically, debated public issues in closed meetings, conducted hall meetings and communicated their views to the government. The objective of MMS was to create a consensus among people of different parts of the Presidency on various issues of public interest and to present it to the government. Its demands included conduct of simultaneous civil services examinations in England and India, abolition of the Council of India in London, reduction of taxes and reduction of civil and military expenditure. Many of its demands were adopted later by the Indian National Congress founded in 1885.

(d) Moderate Phase

Provincial associations such as the Madras Mahajana Sabha led to the formation of an all-India organisation, the Indian National Congress Leaders from different parts of India attended several meetings before the formation of the Congress. One such meeting was held in December 1884 in Theosophical Society. It was attended by Dadabhai Naoroji, K.T. Telang, Surendranath Banerjee and other prominent leaders apart from G. Subramaniam, Rangaiah and Anandacharlu from Madras.



Dadabhai Naoroji



Gokhale

Prominent Nationalists of Tamil Nadu in the Moderate phase

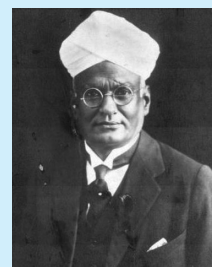
The early nationalists believed in constitutional methods. Their activities consisted of conducting hall meetings and deliberating the problems of the country in English. These views were communicated



V.S. Srinivasa Sastri



P.S. Sivasamy



G.A. Natesan

to the government in a language couched in a liberal discourse in the form of petitions, prayers, memoranda, and as evidence in various government commissions of enquiry. When, at the time of Partition of Bengal, Tilak and other leaders adopted popular methods such as mass public meetings, and used vernacular languages to address the larger public, the early nationalists came to be known as moderates. The distinguished Tamil Moderates from Madras: V.S. Srinivasa Sastri, P.S. Sivasamy, V. Krishnasamy, T.R. Venkatramanar, G.A. Natesan, T.M. Madhava Rao, and S. Subramaniam. The primary contribution of moderates lies in exposing the liberal claims of the British: they exposed how the British exploited India and their hypocrisy in following democratic principles in England and imposing an unrepresentative government in the colonies.

The first session of the Indian National Congress was held in 1885 at Bombay. Out of a total of 72 delegates 22 members were from Madras. G. Subramaniam through his writings advanced the cause of nationalism. He ranks with Naoroji and Gokhale for his contribution to the understanding of the economic exploitation of India by the British.

The second session of the Indian National Congress was held in Calcutta in 1886, with Dadabhai Naoroji in the Chair. The third session was held at Makkis Garden, now known as **Badruddin Tyabji** the Thousand lights, in Madras in 1887 with Badruddin Tyabji as president. Out of the 607 all India delegates of 362 were from Madras Presidency.



Tamil Nadu was then part of the Madras Presidency which included large parts of the present-day states of Andhra Pradesh (Coastal districts and Rayalaseema), Karnataka (Bengaluru, Bellary, South Canara), Kerala (Malabar) and even Odisha (Ganjam).

9.2 Swadeshi Movement

The partition of Bengal (1905) led to the Swadeshi Movement and changed the course of the struggle for freedom. In various parts of India, especially Bengal, Punjab and Maharashtra popular leaders emerged. They implemented the programme of the Calcutta Congress which called upon the nation to promote Swadeshi enterprise, boycott foreign goods and promote national education. The Swadeshi movement made a deep impact in Tamil Nadu. The Congress carried on a vigorous campaign for boycott of foreign goods.

(a) Response in Tamilnadu

V.O. Chidambaranar, V. Chakkaraiyar, Subramania Bharati and Surendranath Arya were some of the prominent leaders in Tamilnadu. Public meetings attended by thousands of people were organised in various parts of Tamilnadu. Tamil was used on the public platform for the first time to mobilise the people. Subaramania Bharati's patriotic songs were especially important



V.O. Chidambaranar

in stirring patriotic emotions. Many journals were started to propagate Swadeshi ideals. *Swadesamitran* and *India* were prominent journals. The extremist leader Bipin Chandra Pal toured Madras and delivered lectures which inspired the youth. Students and youth participated widely in the Swadeshi Movement.

Swadeshi Steam Navigation Company

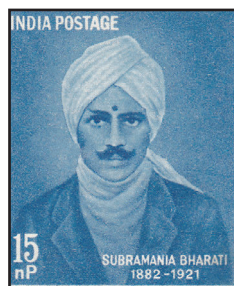
One of the most enterprising acts in pursuance of *swadeshi* was the launching of the Swadeshi Steam Navigation Company at Thoothukudi by V.O. Chidambaranar. He purchased two ships *Gallia* and *Lavo* and plied them between Thoothukudi and Colombo. However, due to cutthroat competition from the European company and the blatantly partisan role played by the government, V.O.C's efforts ended in failure.



Tirunelveli Uprising



Bipin Chandra Pal



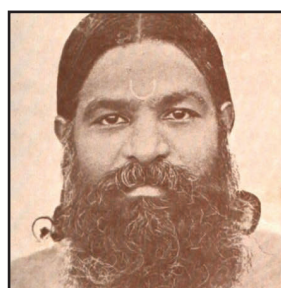
Bharati

V.O.C joined with Subramania Siva in organising the mill workers in Thoothukudi and Tirunelveli. In 1908, he led a strike in the European-owned Coral Mills. It coincided with the release of Bipin Chandra Pal. V.O.C and Subramania Siva, who organised a public meeting to celebrate the release of Bipin, were arrested. The two leaders were charged with sedition and sentenced to rigorous imprisonment. Initially V.O.C. was given a draconian sentence of two life imprisonments. The news of the arrest sparked riots in Tirunelveli leading to the burning down of the police station, court building and municipal office. It led to the death

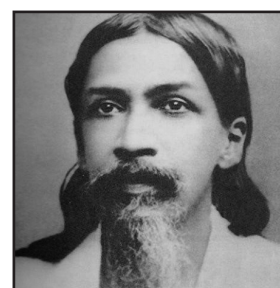
of four people in police firing. V.O.C. was treated harshly in prison and was made to pull the heavy oil press. Others to be arrested included G. Subramaniam and Ethiraj Surendranath Arya. To avoid imprisonment Subramania Bharati moved to Pondicherry which was under French rule. Bharati's example was followed by many other nationalists such as Aurobindo Ghosh and V. V. Subramanianar. The brutal crackdown on Swadeshi leaders virtually brought the Swadeshi Movement to a close in Tamil Nadu.

(b) Revolutionary Activities in Tamil Nadu

As elsewhere the Swadeshi movement inspired the youth. Left leaderless, they turned to the revolutionary path. Pondicherry provided a safe haven for the revolutionaries. Many of these revolutionaries in Tamil Nadu were introduced and trained in revolutionary activities at India House in London and in Paris. M.P.T. Acharya, V.V. Subramanianar and T.S.S. Rajan were prominent among them. Revolutionary literature was distributed by them in Madras through Pondicherry. Radical papers such as *India*, *Vijaya* and *Suryodayam* came out of Pondicherry. Such revolutionary papers and Bharati's poems were banned as seditious literature. These activities in Pondicherry intensified with the arrival of Aurobindo Ghosh and V.V. Subramanianar in 1910. These activities continued till the outbreak of the First World War.



V.V. Subramanianar



Aurobindo Ghosh

Ashe Murder

In 1904 Nilakanta Brahmachari and others started Bharata Matha Society, a secret society. The objective was to kill British officials and thereby kindle patriotic fervour among

the people. Vanchinathan of Senkottai, was influenced by this organisation. On 17 June 1911 he shot dead Robert W.D'E. Ashe, Collector of Tirunelveli in Maniyachi Junction. After this he shot himself. Divorced from the people these young revolutionaries, despite their patriotism, failed to inspire and mobilize the people.

(c) Annie Besant and the Home Rule Movement

While the extremists and revolutionaries were suppressed with an iron hand, the moderates hoped for some constitutional reforms. However, they were disappointed with the Minto-Morley reforms as it did not provide for responsible government. Despite this the Congress extended support to the British war effort in the hope of getting more reforms.

Thus when the national movement was in its ebb, Annie Besant, an Irish lady and leader of the Theosophical Society, proposed the Home Rule Movement on the model of Irish Home Rule League. She started Home Rule League in 1916 and carried forward the demand for home rule all over India. G.S. Arundale, B.P. Wadia and C.P. Ramaswamy assisted her in this campaign. They demanded home rule with only a nominal allegiance to British Crown. She started the newspapers *New India* and *Commonweal* to carry forward her agenda. She remarked, "Better bullock carts and freedom than a *train deluxe* with subjection". Under the Press Act of 1910 Annie Besant was asked to pay hefty amount as security. She wrote two books, *How India wrought for Freedom* and *India: A Nation and a pamphlet on self-government*.

Students joined the movement in large numbers who were trained in Home Rule classes. They were formed into boy scouts and volunteer troops. Annie Besant and her co-workers were interned and prohibited from making public speeches or involve in any political activity. Annie Besant was elected the President of the Congress session of 1917. Members of the Home Rule Movement such as B.P. Wadia played a key role in organising

the working classes by forming trade unions. Not only did they succeed in improving their working conditions, they made them part of the struggle for freedom. However, with the rise of Gandhi as a national leader Annie Besant and the Home Rule Leagues were eclipsed.

9.3 Non-Brahmin Movement and the Challenge to Congress

In the meanwhile, there was rapid growth in education in the Madras Presidency. There was an increase in the number of educated non-Brahmins. Intense political and social activity discussed above politicised the educated non-Brahmins. They raised the issue of caste discrimination and unequal opportunities in government employment and representation in elected bodies, which were dominated by Brahmins. Further, the Congress was also overwhelmingly composed of Brahmins.

(a) The South Indian Liberal Federation

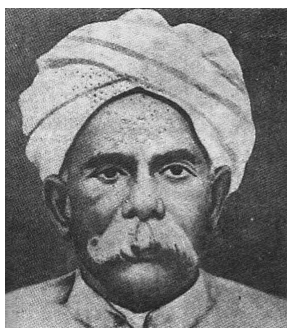
The non-Brahmins organised themselves into political organisations to protect their interests. In 1912 the Madras Dravidian Association was founded. C. Natesanar played an active role as its secretary. In June 1916 he established the Dravidian Association Hostel for non-Brahmin students. He also played a key role in bridging the differences between two leading non-Brahmin leaders of the time, Dr. T.M. Nair and P. Thyagarayar. Both of them were earlier part of the Congress and were disillusioned by how non-Brahmins were sidelined in the organisation. On 20 November 1916 a meeting of about thirty non-Brahmins was held under the leadership of P. Thyagarayar, Dr. T.M. Nair and C. Natesanar at Victoria Public Hall in Chennai. The South Indian Liberal Federation (SILF) was founded to promote the interests of the non-Brahmins. They also launched three newspapers: *Justice* in English, *Dravidian* in Tamil and *Andhra Prakasika* in Telugu. Soon the SILF began to be popularly known as Justice

Party after its English daily. The Justice Party also held several conferences throughout the Presidency to set up branches.

Demand for Reservation

The Non-Brahmin Manifesto was released outlining its objectives viz., reservation of jobs for non-Brahmins in government service, and seats in representative bodies. It opposed the Home Rule Movement as a movement of Brahmins and feared that Home Rule might give them more power. It also criticised the Congress as a party of the Brahmins. Montagu's announcement of political reforms in the Parliament in 1917 intensified political discussions in Tamil Nadu. The Justice Party demanded communal representation (i.e. representation for various communities in society). The Madras Government was also supportive of the Justice Party as the latter believed that English rule was conducive for the development of the non-Brahmins. The Act of 1919 provided reservation of seats to non-Brahmins, a move criticised by the Congress but welcomed by the Justice Party.

Justice Ministry



A Subbarayalu



Raja of Panagal

The Congress boycotted the elections of 1920. The Justice Party won 63 of 98 elected seats in the Legislative Council. A. Subbarayalu of the Justice Party became the first chief minister. After the 1923 elections, Raja of Panagal of the Justice Party formed the ministry. The Justice Party introduced various measures for the benefit of non-Brahmins. They were reservation of appointments in local bodies and education institutions, establishment of Staff Selection Board which

later became the Public Service Commission, enactment of Hindu Religious Endowment Act and Madras State Aid to Industries Act, abolition of *devadasi* system, allotment of *poromboke* lands (waste government lands) to the poor for housing and extension of primary education to the depressed classes through fee concessions, scholarships and mid-day meals.

(b) Government's Repressive Measures: Rowlatt Act

Given the important contribution of India (especially the soldiers who fought in far-off lands in the cause of Empire) in World War I Indians expected more reforms from Britain. However, a draconian Anarchical and Revolutionary Crimes Act, popularly known as the Rowlatt Act, after the name of Sir Sidney Rowlatt, who headed the committee that recommended it was passed in 1919. Under the Act anyone could be imprisoned on charges of terrorism without due judicial process. Indians were aghast at this. Gandhi gave voice to the anger of the people and adopted the Satyagraha method that he had used in South Africa.

Rowlatt Satyagraha

On 18 March 1919 Gandhi addressed a meeting on Marina Beach. On 6 April 1919 *hartal* was organised to protest against the "Black Act". Protest demonstrations were held at several parts of Tamil Nadu. Processions from many areas of the city converged in the Marina beach where there was a large gathering. They devoted the whole day to fasting and prayer in the Marina beach. Madras Satyagraha Sabha was formed. Rajaji, Kasturirangar, S. Satyamurty and George Joseph addressed the meeting. A separate meeting of workers was addressed by V. Kalyanasundaram (Thiru. V. Ka) B.P. Wadia and V.O.C. An important aspect of the movement was that the working classes, students and women took part in large numbers.



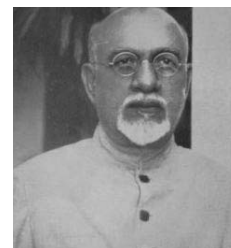
S. Satyamurty

George Joseph

George Joseph, a barrister and eloquent speaker, played a leading role in organising and publicising the cause of Home Rule League in Madurai. Though born in Chengannur (Alappuzha district, Kerala State), he chose to settle down in Madurai and practice as a people's lawyer. In the course of his long public life, he led the Vaikom Satyagraha in Kerala, as he viewed it as an issue of civil rights for all citizens of India. He championed the cause of the "Criminal Tribes" of Tamilnadu. He was fondly called "Rosaappu Durai" by the people of Madurai for the services he rendered to the affected communities. He helped the Harvey Mill workers of Madurai to set up Madurai Labour Union (1918). The Union's initial struggles resulted in higher wages and reduced work hours for the mill workers.



branch of the Muslim League. As a result, the Hindus and the Muslims cooperated closely during the course of the movement in Tamil Nadu. A Congress volunteer corps was set up to distribute pamphlets, carry flags during processions and to maintain order in the meetings. They also played an important part in picketing of liquor shops.



Yakub Hasan

(a) No Tax Campaigns and Temperance Movement

As part of the non-cooperation movement, in many places, cultivators refused to pay taxes. A no-tax campaign took place in Thanjavur. Councils, schools and courts were boycotted. Foreign goods were boycotted. There were a number of workers' strikes all over region, many of them led by nationalist leaders. One of the important aspects of the movement in Tamil Nadu was the temperance movement or movement against liquor. Toddy shops were picketed. Demonstrations and hartals were organised in all parts of the Presidency. There were also agitations by communities against the Criminal Tribes Act. In November 1921 it was decided to organise civil disobedience. Rajaji, Subramania Sastri and EVR were arrested. The visit of Prince of Wales on 13 January 1922 was boycotted. In the police repression two were killed and many injured. The Non-Cooperation Movement was withdrawn in 1922 after the Chauri Chaura incident in which 22 policemen were killed.

(c) Khilafat Movement

Following the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre General Dyer who was responsible for it was not only acquitted of all charges but rewarded. After the First World War the Caliph of Turkey was humiliated and deprived of all powers. To restore the Caliph the Khilafat Movement was started. Muslims who had largely kept from the nationalist movement now joined it in huge numbers. In Tamil Nadu Khilafat Day was observed on 17 April 1920, with a meeting presided over by Maulana Shaukat Ali. Another such conference was held at Erode. Vaniyambadi was as the epicenter of Khilafat agitation.

9.4 Non-Cooperation Movement

Tamil Nadu was active during the Non-cooperation Movement. C. Rajaji and E.V. Ramaswamy (EVR, later known as Periyar) provided the leadership. Rajaji worked closely with Yakub Hasan, founder of the Madras

(b) E.V.R. and the Constructive Programme

E.V.R. played an important role in Tamil Nadu during this period. He campaigned vigorously for the promotion and sale of khadi. In his opposition to consumption of liquor he cut down an entire coconut grove owned by him. He also played a key role in the *satyagraha* for temple entry in Vaikom, then under Travancore. It was a time when the depressed classes were



not even permitted to walk on the streets around the temple or come within a certain distance of the upper castes. After the major leaders of Kerala were arrested, EVR went to Vaikom and galvanised the movement. He was arrested and sentenced to one-month imprisonment. He refused to leave Vaikom even after his release. He was arrested again for making inspiring speeches and was sentenced to six months rigorous imprisonment. When he returned to Erode after his release he was arrested for his speeches to promote *khadi*. In June 1925, the ban on the roads around the temple in Vaikom was lifted. For his contribution against caste discrimination and temple entry agitation in Vaikom, Periyar was hailed as 'Vaikom Hero'.

Cheranmadevi Gurukulam Controversy

However, by this time E.V.R. had become increasingly dissatisfied with the Congress. He felt it was promoting the interests of the Brahmins alone. The Cheranmadevi Gurukulam controversy and opposition to communal representation within the Congress led E.V.R. to leave the Congress.

To further the cause of national education, a gurukulam was established in Cheranmadevi by V.V. Subramanianar. It received funds from the Congress. However, students were discriminated on the basis of caste. Brahmin and Non-Brahmin students were made to dine separately and the food served too was different. The issue was brought to the notice of E.V.R. who questioned the practice and severely criticised it along with another leader, Dr P. Varadarajulu.

In the Kanchipuram Conference of the Tamil Nadu Congress Committee held on 21 November 1925, he raised the issue of representation for non-Brahmins in the legislature. His efforts to achieve this since 1920 had met with failure. When the resolution was defeated, he left the Conference along with other non-Brahmin leaders who met separately. Soon E.V.R. left the Congress and started the Self Respect Movement.

(c) Swarajists–Justicites Rivalry

Following the withdrawal of the Non-Cooperation Movement, the Congress was divided between 'no-changers' who wanted to continue the boycott of the councils and 'pro-changers' who wanted to contest the elections for the councils. Rajaji along with other staunch Gandhian followers opposed the council entry. Along with Kasturirangar and M.A. Ansari, Rajaji advocated the boycott of the councils. Opposition to this led to the formation of the Swaraj Party within the Congress by Chittaranjan Das and Motilal Nehru. In Tamil Nadu the Swarajists were led by S. Srinivasanar and S. Satyamurti.

(d) Subbarayan Ministry

In the elections held in 1926, the Swarajists won the majority of the elected seats. However, it did not accept office in accordance with the Congress policy. Instead they supported an independent, P. Subbarayan to form the ministry. The



P. Subbarayan

Agitation for Removal of Neill Statue (1927)

James Neill of the Madras Fusiliers (infantry men with firearms) was brutal in wreaking vengeance at Kanpur ('the Cawnpur massacre', as it was called) in which many English women and children were killed in the Great Rebellion of 1857. Neill was later killed by an Indian sepoy. A statue was erected for him at Mount Road, Madras. Nationalists saw this as an insult to Indian sentiments, and organised a series of demonstrations in Madras. Protesters came from all over the Madras Presidency and were led by S. N. Somayajulu of Tirunelveli. Many were arrested and sentenced to prison. Gandhi, who visited Madras during the same time, gave his support to the agitation. The statue was finally moved to Madras Museum when Congress Ministry, led by C. Rajaji, formed the government in 1937.

Swarajists did not contest the 1930 elections leading to an easy victory for the Justice Party. The Justice Party remained in office till 1937.

(e) Simon Commission Boycott

In 1927 a statutory commission was constituted under Sir John Simon to review the Act of 1919 and to suggest reforms. However, to the great disappointment of Indians, it was an all-white commission with not a single Indian member. So the Congress boycotted the Simon Commission. In Madras, the Simon Boycott Propaganda Committee was set up with S. Satyamurti as the president. There was widespread campaign among the students, shopkeepers, lawyers and commuters in train to boycott. The arrival of Simon Commission in Madras on 18 February 1929 was greeted with demonstrations and hartals. Black flags were waved against the Commission. The police used force to suppress the protest.

9.5 Civil Disobedience Movement

(a) Towards Poorna Swaraj

In the 1920s, Congress with Gandhi in leadership, was transforming into a broad-based movement in Tamil Nadu. The Madras session of the Indian National Congress in 1927 declared complete independence as its goal. It appointed a committee under Motilal Nehru to frame the constitutional reforms in opposition to the Simon Commission. In the 1929 Lahore session of the Congress, Poorna Swaraj (complete independence) was adopted as the goal and on 26 January 1930 the national flag was hoisted by Jawaharlal Nehru on the banks of river Ravi as the declaration of independence.

(b) Salt March to Vedaranyam

When the Viceroy did not accept the demands put forward by Gandhi, he launched the Civil Disobedience Movement by setting out on a Salt Satyagraha with a march to Dandi

on 12 March 1930. The Civil Disobedience Movement was a mass movement with the participation of students, shopkeepers, workers, women, etc. Demonstrations, hartals, staging of swadeshi dramas and songs were the order the day in both rural and urban areas. Tamil Nadu was in the forefront of the Civil Disobedience Movement. In the city of Madras, shops were picketed and foreign goods boycotted. Rajaji organised and led a salt satyagraha march to Vedaranyam. The march started from Tiruchirappalli on 13 April 1930 and reached Vedaranyam in Thanjavur district on 28 April. A special song was composed for the march by Namakkal V. Ramalinganar with the lines, "A War is ahead *sans* sword, *sans* bloodshed...Join this march." Despite a brutal crackdown by the police, the marching *satyagrahis* were provided a warm reception along the route. On reaching Vedaranyam 12 volunteers under the leadership of Rajaji broke the salt law by picking up salt. Rajaji was arrested. T.S.S. Rajan, Rukmani Lakshmipathi, Sardar Vedarathnam, C. Swaminathar and K. Santhanam were among the prominent leaders who participated in the Vedaranyam Salt Satyagraha.



Vedaranyam Salt March Memorial

(c) Widespread Agitations in Tamil Districts

The *satyagrahis* under the leadership of T. Prakasam and K. Nageswara Rao set up a camp at Udayavanam near Madras. However, the police arrested them. It led to a hartal in

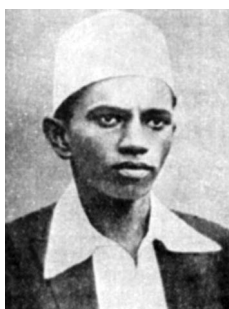
Madras. The clashes with the police in Tiruvallikeni which lasted for three hours on 27 April 1930 left three dead. Volunteers who attempted to offer *salt Satyagraha* in Rameswaram were arrested. Similar attempts at Uvari, Anjengo, Veppalodai, Thoothukudi and Tharuvaikulam were stopped. Mill workers struck work across the province. Woman participated enthusiastically. Rukmani Lakshmipathi was the first woman to pay penalty for violation of salt laws. Police used brutal force to suppress the movement. Bhashyam, popularly known as Arya, hoisted the national flag atop Fort St. George on 26 January 1932. Satyamurti actively picketed shops selling foreign clothes, organised processions and distributed pamphlets. N.M.R.Subbaraman and K. Kamaraj also played an important role.



**Rukmani
Lakshmipathi**

Martyrdom of Tirupur Kumaran

On 11 January 1932 a procession carrying national flags and singing patriotic songs was brutally beaten by the police in Tirupur. O.K.S.R. Kumaraswamy, popularly Tirupur Kumaran, fell dead holding the national flag aloft. He is hailed as *Kodikatha Kumaran*. Thus, civil disobedience movement was one of the largest mass movements in Tamil Nadu with participation of people from all sections of the society.



Tirupur Kumaran

(d) First Congress Ministry

The Government of India Act of 1935 introduced Provincial Autonomy. The Council of Ministers, responsible to the legislature, administered the provincial subjects. However, the Governor was empowered to disregard the advice of the elected government. In the 1937 election the Congress emerged victorious. The

Justice Party was trounced. Congress victory in the elections clearly indicated its popularity with the people.

Rajaji formed the first Congress Ministry. He introduced prohibition on an experimental basis in Salem. To compensate for the loss of revenue he introduced a sales tax. On the social question, he opened temples to the 'untouchables'. Efforts of T. Prakasam led to the appointment of a committee to enquire into the condition of the tenants in the Zamindari areas. However, excepting debt conciliation boards to reduce rural indebtedness, no other measure was adopted. When the British involved India in the Second World War without consulting the elected Congress ministries, the latter resigned.



C. Rajaji

A temple entry programme with "harijans" in Madurai Meenakshiamman temple was organised (9 July 1939) by Vaidyanathar, L.N. Gopalsamy, President and Secretary of Madurai Harijana Sevak Sangh respectively. The Temple Entry Authorisation and Indemnity Act, 1939 for the removal of the civil and social disabilities against the "depressed classes" was passed.

(e) Anti-Hindi Agitation

One of the controversial measures of Rajaji was the introduction of Hindi as a compulsory subject in schools. This was considered to be a form of Aryan and North Indian imposition detrimental to Tamil language and culture, and therefore caused much public resentment. E.V.R. led a massive campaign against it. He organised an anti-Hindi Conference at Salem. It formulated a definite programme of action. The Scheduled Castes Federation and the Muslim League extended its support to the anti-Hindi agitation. Natarajan and Thalamuthu, two of the enthusiastic agitators died in prison. A rally was organised from

Tiruchirappalli to Madras. More than 1200 protestors including E.V.R. were arrested. After the resignation of the Congress Ministry, the Governor of Madras who took over the reigns of administration removed Hindi as compulsory subject.

9.6 Quit India Struggle

Failure of the Cripps Mission, war time shortages and price rise created much discontent among the people. On 8 August 1942 the Quit India resolution was passed and Gandhi gave the slogan 'Do or Die'. The entire Congress leadership was arrested overnight. K. Kamaraj while returning from Bombay noticed that at every railway station the police waited with a list of local leaders and arrested them as they got down. Kamaraj gave the police the slip and got down at Arakkonam itself. He then worked underground and organised people during the Quit India Movement. Rajaji and Satyamurti were arrested together when they went about distributing pamphlets. The movement was widespread in Tamilnadu and



K. Kamaraj

there were many instances of violence such as setting fire to post offices, cutting of telegraph lines and disrupting railway traffic.

Undying Mass Movement

All sections of the society participated in the movement. There were a large number of workers strike such as strikes in Buckingham and Carnatic Mills, Madras Port Trust, Madras Corporation and the Electric Tramway. Telegraph and telephone lines were cut and public building burnt at Vellore and Panapakkam. Students of various colleges took active part in the protests. The airport in Sullur was attacked and trains derailed in Coimbatore. Congress volunteers clashed with the military in Madurai. There were police firings at Rajapalayam, Karaikudi and Devakottai. Many young men and women also joined the INA. The Quit India Movement was suppressed with brutal force.

The Royal Indian Navy Mutiny, the negotiations initiated by the newly formed Labour Party Government in England resulting in India's independence but sadly with partition of the country into India and Pakistan has formed part of the Lesson in Unit VIII.

SUMMARY

- Contributions of Madras Native Association, Madras Mahajana Sabha and the nationalist press to the growth of nationalism in Tamil Nadu are discussed.
- Swadeshi phase of the Indian National Movement in Tamil Nadu, with focus on role played by V.O.C., Subramania Siva, Subramania Bharathi, is detailed.
- Non-Brahmin Movement throwing up challenges to nationalist politics during Dyarchy is highlighted.
- Non-cooperation Movement, E.V.R.'s differences with the Congress, the birth of Swaraj Party at the national level and the Self-Respect Movement in the Tamil region are examined.
- Tamil Nadu's participation in the Civil Disobedience Movement organised to protest the disappointment over Simon Commission and the Round Table Conferences are dealt with.
- The elections under Government of India Act, 1935 and the formation of first Congress Ministry in Madras under Rajaji are outlined.
- Resignation of Congress Ministries following the outbreak of World War II, Quit India Movement and Tamil participation in it are described.

GLOSSARY

hegemony	leadership or dominance, especially by one state or social group over others	மேலாதிக்கம்
obnoxious	extremely unpleasant	விரும்பத்தகாத, வெறுக்கப்படுகிற
propaganda	biased information used to promote political cause	கருத்துப் பரப்புரை, பிரச்சாரம்
consensus	a general agreement	கருத்து ஒருமைப்பாடு, முழு இசைவு
hypocrisy	insincerity/two-facedness, dishonesty, lip service	பாசாங்கு, போலிமை
mobilize	prepare and organize	திரட்டு, போருக்கெனப் படைகளை ஆயத்தமாக்கு
sedition	inciting or causing people to rebel against the authority of a state or monarch	ஆட்சிக்கு எதிரான
demonstration	a protest meeting or march against something	பொது ஆர்ப்பாட்ட நிகழ்ச்சி
picket	a blockade of a workplace or other venue	மறியல்
discrimination	unjust or differential treatment of different categories of people, especially on the grounds of caste, creed, etc.	வேறுபாடு காட்டுகிற
boycott	refuse to cooperate with or participate in	புறக்கணி
brutal	savagely violent	கொடுமைமிக்க, இரக்கமற்ற
patriotic	having devotion to and vigorous support for one's own country	நாட்டுப்பற்று
repression	action of subduing someone or something with force	அடக்குமுறை
reservation	assignment of electoral seats especially for some community	ஒதுக்கீடு
revolution	forcible overthrow of a government	புரட்சி, திடீர் ஆட்சிமாற்றம்



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

- Who was the first President of the Madras Mahajana Sabha?
 - T.M. Nair
 - P. Rangaiah
 - G. Subramaniam
 - G.A. Natesan

- Where was the third session of the Indian National Congress held?
 - Marina
 - Mylapore
 - Fort St. George
 - Thousand Lights
- Who said "Better bullock carts and freedom than a *train de luxe* with subjection"?
 - Annie Besant
 - M. Veeraraghavachari
 - B.P. Wadia
 - G.S. Arundale



4. Which among the following was SILF's official organ in English?
a) Dravidian b) Andhra Prakasika
c) Justice d) New India
5. Who among the following were Swarajists?
a) S. Satyamurti b) Kasturirangar
c) P. Subbarayan d) Periyar EVR
6. Who set up the satyagraha camp in *Udyavanam* near Madras?
a) Kamaraj b) Rajaji
c) K. Santhanam d) T. Prakasam
7. Where was the anti-Hindi Conference held?
a) Erode b) Madras c) Salem d) Madurai
8. Where did the congress volunteers clash with the military during Quit India Movement?
a) Erode b) Madras c) Salem d) Madurai

II. Fill in the blanks

1. _____ was appointed the first Indian Judge of the Madras High Court.
2. The economic exploitation of India was exposed by _____ through his writings.
3. Nilakanta Brahmachari started the secret society named _____.
4. The starting of trade unions in Madras was pioneered by _____.
5. The Dravidian Association Hostel for non-Brahmin students was established by _____.
6. _____ formed the first Congress Ministry in Madras.
7. _____ was the founder of the Madras branch of the Muslim League.
8. _____ hoisted the national flag atop Fort St. George on 26 January 1932.

III. Choose the correct statement

1. (i) Madras Native Association was founded in 1852.
(ii) Tamil nationalist periodical *Swadesamitran* was started in 1891.
- (iii) The Madras Mahajana Sabha demanded conduct of civil services examinations only in India
- (iv) V.S. Srinivasanar was an extremist.
a) (i) and (ii) are correct
b) (iii) is correct
c) (iv) is correct
d) All are correct
2. (i) EVR did not participate in the Non-Cooperation Movement.
(ii) Rajaji worked closely with Yakub Hasan of the Muslim League.
(iii) Workers did not participate in the Non-Cooperation Movement.
(iv) Toddy shops were not picketed in Tamil Nadu.
a) (i) and (ii) are correct
b) (i) and (iii) are correct
c) (ii) is correct
d) (i), (iii) and (iv) are correct
3. **Assertion (A):** The Justice Party opposed the Home Rule Movement.
Reason (R): The Justice Party feared that Home Rule would give the Brahmins more power.
a) Both A and R are correct but R is not the correct explanation
b) A is correct but R is wrong
c) Both A and R are wrong
d) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation
4. **Assertion (A):** EVR raised the issue of representation for non-Brahmins in legislature.
Reason (R): During the first Congress Ministry, Rajaji abolished sales tax.
a) Both A and R are correct but R is not the correct explanation
b) A is correct but R is wrong
c) Both A and R are wrong
d) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation

IV. Match the Following

1. MNA - Anti-Hindi agitation
2. EVR Periyar - Removal of Neill Statue
3. S.N. Somayajulu - Salt Satyagraha
4. Vedaranyam - Torture Commission
5. Thalamuthu - Vaikom Hero

V. Answer the questions briefly

1. List out the contribution of the moderates.
2. Write a note on the Tirunelveli Uprising.
3. What is the contribution of Annie Besant to India's freedom struggle?
4. Mention the various measures introduced by the Justice Ministry.
5. Write briefly on EVR's contribution to the constructive programme?
6. What is Cheranmadevi Gurukulam controversy?
7. Why was anti-Hindi agitation popular?
8. Outline the key incidents during the Quit India Movement in Tamil Nadu.

VI. Answer the questions given under each caption

1. Early Nationalist Movement in Tamil Nadu
 - a) What were the objectives of Madras Native Association?
 - b) What led to the emergence of nationalist press in Tamil Nadu?
 - c) What were the demands of Madras Mahajana Sabha?
 - d) Who were the early nationalist leaders in Tamil Nadu?
2. Revolutionary Movement in Tamil Nadu
 - a) List a few revolutionaries in Tamil Nadu.
 - b) Why did Subramania Bharati moved to Pondicherry?
 - c) Name a few of the revolutionary literature?
 - d) What did Vanchinathan do?

3. Non Brahmin Movement

- a) Why was the South Indian Liberal Federation formed?
- b) What is the Non-Brahmin Manifesto?
- c) Why did EVR join the Non-Brahmin Movement?
- d) What do you know about anti-Hindi agitation?

VII. Answer in detail

1. Discuss the response to Swadeshi Movement in Tamil Nadu.
2. Examine the origin and growth of Non-Brahmin Movement in Tamil Nadu.
3. Describe the role of Tamil Nadu in the Civil Disobedience Movement.

VIII. Activity

1. Students can be asked to write a sentence or two about the important places of freedom struggle in Tamil Nadu.
2. Role Play: Students can be divided into groups and asked to debate the views of the Moderates, Extremists, Revolutionaries, Annie Besant's supporters, Justice Party, and British Government.

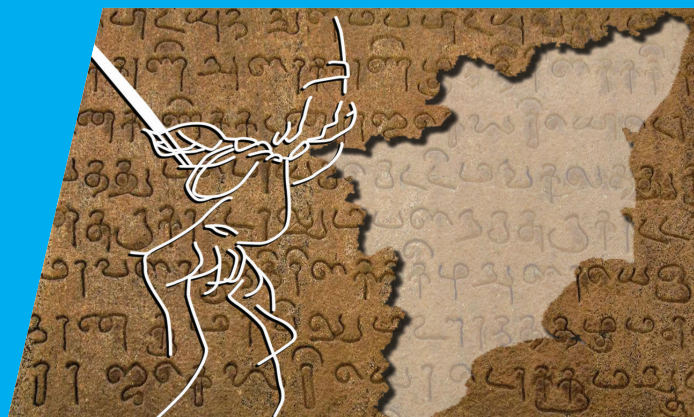


REFERENCE BOOKS

1. K. Rajayyan, *Tamil Nadu: A Real History*, Ratna Publications, Trivandrum, 2005.
2. Saroja Sundararajan, *March to Freedom in Madras Presidency, 1916–1947*, Lalitha Publications, Madras, 1989.
3. N. Rajendran, *National Movement in Tamil Nadu, 1905–1914: Agitational Politics and State Coercion*, Oxford University Press, Madras, 1994.
4. A.R. Venkatachalapathy, *Tamil Characters: Personalities, Politics, Culture*, Pan Macmillan, 2018.

Unit - 10

Social Transformation in Tamil Nadu



Learning Objectives

To acquaint ourselves with

- To acquire knowledge about the social transformation of modern Tamil Nadu
- To know the different social reform movements in Tamil Nadu
- To understand the ideas of the social reformers



Introduction

Europeans established their political power over Indian subcontinent in the latter half of the eighteenth century. While they were concerned with annexing India, by the beginning of the nineteenth century they were reordering Indian society. New revenue settlements were made. Influenced by British Utilitarian ideas and evangelicals they also tried to impose their cultural superiority over the Indian people. Indigenous traditions were treated as primitive. Indian society was portrayed as conservative where human beings were discriminated on the basis of caste, gender, language and creed.

This caused a reaction among the Indians. During the nineteenth century, educated Indians from different parts of the country began to feel the humiliation and responded by seeking their socio-cultural identity from their past. However, they understood some merits in the colonial arguments and were ready to reform. Raja Rammohan Roy was among the pioneers in this process. Roy and many like him came to be known as social reformers. They were preparing a social and cultural sphere

to counter the cultural hegemony of Europe. It resulted in the social and religious reform movements in modern India. This particular historical development is also identified as the Indian renaissance.

Renaissance is an ideological and cultural phenomenon. It is closely tied to modernity, rationalism and the progressive movement of the society. Critical thinking is at its root. A new philosophical tradition centring around human rationality and equality is its characteristic. The basic inspiration of renaissance is humanism and questioning the fundamentalist religious practices that denied humans their dignity. This ideology of humanism stimulated creative energy in all spheres of social life and knowledge such as language, literature, philosophy, music, painting, architecture, etc.

10.1 Tamil Renaissance

The cultural hegemony of colonialism and the rise of humanism brought several changes in the socio-cultural life of the Indian subcontinent. Modern Tamil Nadu too experienced such a historical transition. Tamil

language and culture played a significant role in their identity construction. The introduction of printing press, linguistic research on Dravidian languages, etc... underpinned the process of Tamil renaissance. Although religious literature was taken up predominantly for publication in the early years after the advent of printing technology, things began to change gradually. Works that can be described as secular were taken up for publishing.

Advent of the Printing Technology

Tamil was the first non-European language that went into print. As early as in 1578, Tamil book, *Thambiran Vanakkam*, was published from Goa. In 1709, a full-fledged printing press had been established thanks to Ziegenbalg in Tranquebar. *Thirukkural* was one of the earliest Tamil literary texts to be published in 1812. This led the resurgence of interest among Tamil scholars in publishing the more ancient Tamil classics around that period.



Ziegenbalg



C.W. Damotharanar



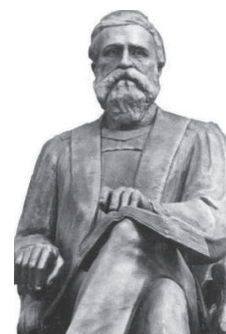
U.V. Swaminathar

In the nineteenth century, Tamil scholars like C.W. Damotharanar (1832–1901), and U.V. Swaminathar (1855–1942) spent their lifetime in the rediscovery of the Tamil classics. C. W. Damotharanar collected and edited different palm-leaf manuscripts of the Tamil grammar and literature. His editions included such texts as *Tolkappiyam*, *Viracholiyam*, *Iraiyanar-Akapporul*, *Ilakkana Vilakkam*, *Kaliththokai* and *Culamani*. U.V. Swaminathar,

a student of Meenakshisundaranar, took efforts to publish the classical texts such as *Civakachinthamani* (1887), *Paththupattu* (1889), *Chilapathikaram* (1892), *Purananuru* (1894), *Purapporul-Venpa-Malai* (1895), *Manimekalai* (1898), *Ainkurunuru* (1903) and *Pathittrupathu* (1904). This provided the Tamil people with a revelation about their heritage. Therefore, the rediscovery of ancient classics and their publication is considered the foundation of Tamil renaissance.

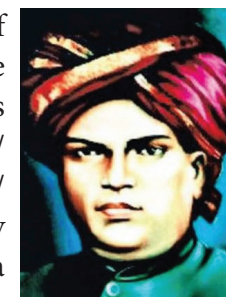
The publication of these ancient literary texts created an awareness among the Tamil people about their historical tradition, language, literature and religion. Modern Tamils founded their social and cultural identity on the ancient Tamil classics, collectively called the Sangam literature. Linguists, historians and Tamil scholars recognised the uniqueness of Tamil culture, which had a separate and independent cultural existence before the coming of the Aryans into the Tamil land.

In 1816, F.W. Ellis (1777–1819) who founded the College of Fort St George, formulated the theory that the south Indian languages belonged to a separate family which was unrelated to the Indo-Aryan family of languages. Robert Caldwell (1814–1891) expanded this argument in a book titled, *A Comparative Grammar of the Dravidian or South Indian Family of Languages*, in 1856. He established the close affinity between the Dravidian languages in contrast with Sanskrit and also established the antiquity of Tamil.



Robert Caldwell

Tamil intellectuals of this period identified the fundamental differences between Tamil/Dravidian/Egalitarian and Sanskrit/Aryan/Brahmanism. They argued that Tamil was a language of Dravidian



P. Sundaranar

people, who are non-Brahmin and their social life was casteless, gender-sensitised and egalitarian. Tamil renaissance contributed to the origin and growth of Dravidian consciousness in the Tamil country. These ideas are exemplified in the Tamil invocation song in the play, *Manonmaniam* written by P. Sundaranar (1855–1897).



Thiru. Vi. Ka



Bharatidasan

Tamil renaissance questioned the cultural hegemony of Brahminism. These developments were reflected in art, literature, religion, etc. Ramalinga Adigal (1823–1874), popularly known as Vallalar, questioned the existing Hindu religious orthodoxy. Abraham Pandithar (1859–1919) gave prominence to Tamil music and published books on the history of Tamil music. C.W. Damotharanar, U.V. Swaminathar, Thiru Vi. Kaliyanasundaram (1883–1953), Parithimar Kalaighar (1870–1903), Maraimalai Adigal (1876–1950), Subramania Bharathi (1882–1921), S. Vaiyapuri (1891–1956), and the poet Bharatidasan (1891–1964), in their own ways and through their writings, contributed to the revival of Tamil literature. Meanwhile, M. Singaravelar (1860–1946) an early pioneer in Buddhist revival, promoted communism and socialism to counter the colonial power. Pandithar Iyothethassar (1845–1914) and Periyar E.V. Ramasamy (1879–1973) held high the radical philosophy to defend the rights of the socially underprivileged and marginalised section of the people. In addition, the twentieth century Tamil language movements such as *Tani Tamil Iyakkam* and *Tamil Isai Iyakkam*, made a significant cultural impact in creating a pure Tamil free from the influence of Sanskrit.

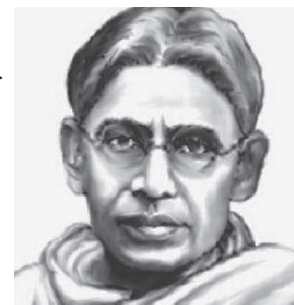
V.G. Suryanarayana Sastri (Parithimar Kalaighar)

V.G. Suryanarayana Sastri (1870–1903), born near Madurai, was professor of Tamil at the Madras Christian College. He was one of the earliest scholars to identify the influence of Sanskrit on Tamil, and adopted **Parithimar Kalighar** a pure Tamil name for himself: Parithimar Kalighar. He was the first to argue that Tamil is a classical language, and demanded that the University of Madras should not call Tamil a vernacular language. Influenced by Western literary models, he introduced the sonnet form in Tamil. He also wrote novels and plays, and a number of essays on science. Tragically, he died at the young age of only 33.



Maraimalai Adigal

Maraimalai Adigal (1876–1950) is considered the father of Tamil linguistic purism and the founder of Tani Tamil Iyakkam (Pure Tamil Movement). He wrote commentaries on the Sangam texts, Pattinappalai and Mullaipattu. As a young man, he worked in a journal, *Siddhanta Deepika*. Later he served as a Tamil teacher in the Madras Christian College for many years. He was inclined towards non-Brahmin movement. His teachers such as P. Sundaranar and Somasundara Nayagar were key influences in his life.



Maraimalai Adigal

Tani Tamil Iyakkam (Pure Tamil Movement)

Maraimalai Adigal promoted the use of pure Tamil words and removal of the Sanskrit influence from the Tamil language. The movement made a great impact on Tamil culture especially in language and literature. The beginnings of the movement are usually

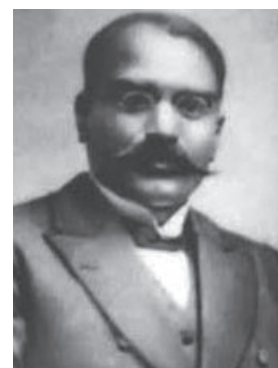
dated to 1916 even though the process of identifying influence of foreign words in Tamil and eliminating them can be dated much earlier to the late nineteenth century. His daughter Neelambikai, played an important role in its foundation. He changed his own name Vedachalam and took on the pure Tamil name of Maraimalai Adigal. His journal *Jnanasagaram* was renamed *Arivukkadal* and his institution, *Samarasa Sanmarga Sangam*, was re-christened as *Potu Nilaik Kalakam*. The movement was critical of Hindi, Sanskrit and the Brahminical hegemony in Tamil society. Neelambikai compiled a dictionary that provided pure Tamil equivalents to Sanskrit words that had crept into Tamil vocabulary. This movement paved the way for later social movements that countered Brahminical and the Sanskrit tradition in Tamil society.

10.2 Rise of the Dravidian Movement

In India, Brahmins enjoyed a high social status, based on their birth, and held great social privileges. In Madras Presidency, Brahmins dominated all the fields of society, especially politics, education and job opportunities in the government. The 1911 census showed that Brahmins were slightly over 3 per cent of Madras Presidency's population, and non-Brahmins 90 per cent. Yet in the ten years from 1901 to 1911 Madras University turned out 4,074 Brahmin graduates compared with only 1,035 non-Brahmin graduates. Numbers for other groups, based on how the population came to be classified then, included Indian Christian 306, Mohammedan 69 and European and Eurasian 225.

In this context, the Dravidian movement emerged as a defence of the non-Brahmins against the Brahmin dominance. An organisation called The Madras Non-Brahmin Association was founded in 1909 to help the non-Brahmin students. In 1912 C. Natesanar, a medical doctor, founded the Madras United League, later renamed as Madras Dravidian

Association to support Dravidian uplift. The organisation focused on educating and supporting non-Brahmin graduates and conducting regular meetings to share their grievances. Meanwhile, Natesanar founded a hostel, the Dravidian



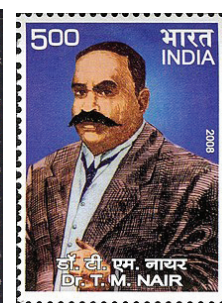
Dr. C. Natesanar

Home, at Triplicane (Madras) in July 1916 to address the lack of hostels for the non-Brahmin students which hindered their educational development. In addition, the home had a literary society for the benefit of non-Brahmin students.

10.3 South Indian Liberal Federation (Justice Party)



Sir Pitti Theagarayar



T.M. Nair

As World War I was in progress the British government was considering the introduction of representative institutions for Indians after the War. Fearing that such political reforms would further strengthen the political power of Brahmins, educated non-Brahmins decided to organise themselves politically. On 20 November 1916 around 30 prominent non-Brahmin leaders including Dr. C. Natesanar, Sir Pitti Theagarayar, T.M. Nair and Alamelu Mangai Thayarammal came together to form the South Indian Liberation Federation (SILF). In the meantime, at a meeting held in the Victoria Public Hall the Non-Brahmin Manifesto was released in December 1916. The manifesto articulated the voice of the

non-Brahmin communities and surveyed the general condition of the non-Brahmins in Madras Presidency.

The association started publishing three newspapers: *Dravidian* in Tamil, *Justice* in English and *Andhra Prakasika* in Telugu, to propagate the ideals of the Party.

The Non-Brahmin Manifesto pointed out that though “Not less than 40 out of the 41½ millions” of the Madras Presidency were non-Brahmins, “in what passes for the politics in Madras they have not taken the part to which they are entitled”. Arguing that a government conducted on “true British principles of justice and equality of opportunity” was in the best interests of India, it declared, that “we are deeply devoted and loyally attached to British rule”.

The first election, under the Montagu-Chelmsford Reforms, was held in 1920 after the introduction of the Dyarchy form of government in the provinces. The Justice Party won the election and formed the first-ever Indian cabinet in Madras. A. Subbarayalu became the Chief Minister of the Madras Presidency and the party formed the government during 1920–1923 and 1923–1926. In the context of Congress Party boycotting the legislature, the Justice Party continued to remain in office till 1937 elections were held. In the 1937 elections the Indian National Congress contested the elections for the first time and trounced the Justice Party.

Programmes and Activities

The Justice Party is the fountain head of the non-Brahmin Movement in the country. The Justice Party government widened education and employment opportunities for the majority of the population and created space for them in the political sphere. Tamil Nadu’s legacy of social justice owes its existence to the formative years of Justice Party in power.

The Justices removed the legal hindrances restricting inter-caste marriages and broke the barriers that prevented Depressed Classes from

the use of public wells and tanks. The Justice Party government ordered that public schools accommodate the children of the Depressed Classes. Hostels were



Muthulakshmi Ammaiyar

established for the students belonging to this social group in 1923. In the meantime, the Madras legislature under the Justice Party government was the first to approve participation of women in the electoral politics in 1921. This resolution created space for woman and thus facilitated Muthulakshmi Ammaiyar to become the first woman legislator in India in 1926.

The Justice Party worked towards legislating provisions for communal representation – reservations for various communities. Two Communal Government Orders (16 September 1921 and 15 August 1922) were passed to ensure equitable distribution in appointments among various castes and communities as a part of achieving social justice. The Justice Party rule established the Staff Selection Board in 1924 for the selection of government officials and encouraged all the communities to share the administrative powers. In 1929, the Government of British India adopted the pattern and established the Public Service Commission.

The Justice Party further concentrated on reforms in religious institutions. Tamil Nadu has a large number of temples and these commanded huge resources. In general, the resources were monopolised and exploited by the dominant caste in the society and led to mismanagement of public resources. The Justice Party introduced the Hindu Religious Endowment (HRE) Act in 1926 and enabled any individual, irrespective of their caste affiliation, to become a member of the temple committee and govern the resources of the religious institutions.

10.4 Self-Respect Movement (*Suyamariyathai Iyakkam*)

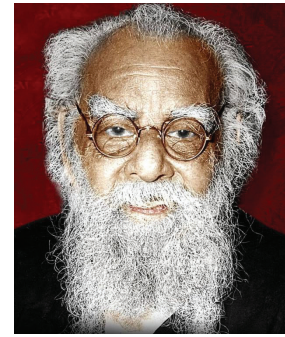
The Self-Respect movement, while critiquing the then prevailing social, political and economic relations, introduced a programme of non-Brahmin uplift in Tamil Nadu. The movement was concerned with the marginalised sections of the society and criticised Brahminism and the cultural hegemony of the Brahmin. It advocated a casteless society devoid of rituals and differences based on birth. The movement declared rationality and self-respect as the birthright of all human beings and held these as more important than self-rule. The movement declared illiteracy as a source for women's subordination and promoted compulsory elementary education for all. It campaigned for the empowerment of women and questioned the superstitious beliefs in the society.

The movement demanded women's emancipation, deplored superstitions, and emphasised rationality. The movement also advocated self-respect marriage. Race was central to self-respect concept, which argued that the non-Brahmin Dravidian people had been systematically subjugated by Aryan-Brahmins over the course of their long history.

The Self-Respect Movement championed not only the cause of the non-Brahmin Hindus, but also that of the Muslims. The Self-Respect Movement extolled the lofty principles of Islam such as equality and brotherhood. They exhorted the Muslims to admit into their fold the depressed sections of the Hindu society, in order that they might enjoy the equality and brotherhood of Islam. Muslim elite considered the Tamil Muslims as Dravidians. Yet Periyar did not hesitate to attack certain customs like wearing of purdah by Muslim women. He wanted the Dravidian Muslims to follow Mustapha Kemal Pasha of Turkey and Amanullah of Afghanistan who initiated reforms in Islamic society.

Periyar E.V.R.

Periyar E.V. Ramasamy (1879–1973) was the founder of the Self-Respect Movement. He was the son of a wealthy businessman in Erode, Venkatappa and Chinna Thayammal.



Periyar E.V.R.

Though possessing little formal education, he engaged in critical discussions with scholars, who used to be patronised by his devout father. As a young man, he once ran away from home and spent many months in Varanasi and other religious centres. The firsthand experience of orthodox Hindu religion led to his disillusionment with religion. On his return, he took care of his family business for some years. His selfless public service and forthrightness made him a popular personality. He held different official positions of Erode that included the Chairmanship of Municipal Council (1918–1919).

In the context of the rise of the non-Brahmin Justice Party after 1917, the Congress inducted non-Brahmin leaders such as Periyar and P. Varadarajulu, at the initiative of C. Rajaji. Periyar resigned all the government positions to support the Non-Cooperation Movement (1920–1922). He gave up his profitable business and became an active member of the Congress. He promoted *khadi* and sold it on the streets of Tamil Nadu. He cut down 500 coconut trees in his farm to support the campaign for prohibition. He held the positions of Secretary and President of the Tamil Nadu Congress Committee.

As president of the Tamil Nadu Congress Committee, Periyar proposed a resolution regarding the rights of “Untouchables” to temple entry. In the name of





Thanthai Periyar Memorial (Vaikom, Kerala)

“caste dharma” the “lower caste” people were denied access to the temples and the streets surrounding the temple. In Vaikom (a town in the then Princely State of Travancore and in present day Kerala), people protested against this practice. In the initial stages George Joseph of Madurai played big role. After the local leaders were arrested Periyar led the movement and was imprisoned. People hailed him as *Vaikom Virar* (Hero of Vaikom). In the meantime, he was disturbed by the caste-based discrimination in the dining hall at the Cheranmadevi *Gurukulam* (school), which was run by V.V.Subramaniam (a Congress leader) with the financial support of the Tamil Nadu Congress Committee. Periyar was disappointed when, despite his objections and protests against this discrimination, the Congress continued to support the iniquitous practice in the Gurukulam.

Periyar was keen on the introduction of reservation in representative bodies such as the legislative council for non-Brahmins. He wanted to pass the resolution in the annual conference of the Tamil Nadu Congress Committee in 1925 at its Kanchipuram session but in vain. The Congress’s inability in addressing these concerns made him quit the Congress in 1925. Following his disillusionment, Periyar started the Self-Respect movement in 1925.

Periyar understood the relevance of mass communication in spreading rationalist thought. He started a number of newspapers and journals such as *Kudi Arasu* (Democracy) (1925), *Revolt* (1928), *Puratchi* (Revolution) (1933), *Paguththarivu* (Rationalism) (1934), and *Viduthalai* (Liberation) (1935). *Kudi*

Arasu was the official newspaper of the Self-Respect Movement. It brought out the multiple voices and ideas of Non-Brahmins, women and religious minorities. Usually, Periyar wrote a column and expressed his opinion on social issues in each of its issues. He frequently wrote columns under the pseudonym of *Chitraputtiran*.

Over the years, Periyar visited many countries and interacted with intellectuals all over. He visited Singapore and Malaya (1929–1930, 1954), Egypt, U.S.S.R. (modern Russia), Greece, Turkey, Germany, England, Spain, France and Portugal (1931–32), and Burma (1954 to attend the 2500th birth Anniversary of the Buddha). His experience of travelling in the Soviet Union and Europe carried Periyar towards socialist ideals. Periyar had a close relationship with Singaravelar who is considered the first communist of south India and a pioneer of Buddhism. In 1936, Periyar got Dr. B. R. Ambedkar’s *Annihilation of Caste* translated into Tamil immediately after it was written. He also supported Ambedkar’s demand for separate electorates for scheduled castes.

In 1937, in opposition to the Rajaji’s government’s move to introduce compulsory Hindi in schools, he launched a popular movement to oppose it. The anti-Hindi agitation (1937–39) had a big impact on Tamilnadu’s politics. Periyar was imprisoned for his role in the movement. When he was still in jail, Periyar was elected the president of the Justice Party. Thereafter the Justice Party merged with the Self-Respect Movement. It was rechristened as Dravidar Kazhagam (DK) in 1944.

Rajaji, the Chief Minister of Madras State (1952–54), introduced a vocational education programme that encouraged imparting school children with training in tune with their father’s occupation. Periyar criticised it as Kula Kalvi Thittam (caste-based education scheme) and opposed it tooth and nail. His campaigns against it led to the resignation of Rajaji. K. Kamaraj became Chief Minister of the Madras

State. Periyar died at the age of ninety four (1973). His mortal remains were buried at Periyar Thidal, Madras.

Periyar's Anti-Hindi Stance

Periyar emphasised that the caste system in south India is linked with the arrival of Brahmins from the North. Ancient Tamil society, he said, had a different stratification based on *tinai*s (regions), determined by natural surroundings and the means of livelihood or occupation of the people. Anti-north Indian campaigns had made Periyar to take an anti-Hindi stand.

Periyar on Religion

Periyar's experiences taught him that it was necessary to eradicate religion in order to impart progress and justice. Periyar advocated atheism to deconstruct the established practices of faith, culture and custom. Periyar wanted religion to be replaced by rationalism. 'Religion means you accept superstitious beliefs', he asserted. Periyar spent his entire life campaigning against superstitions through Thinkers or Rationalists Forums he had formed. Periyar objected to the hereditary priesthood in temples. He argued that eligible individuals, who have a proper religious knowledge, should become priests rather than being based on caste. He encouraged the people to boycott the Brahmin priests and their Vedic rituals. He advocated inter-caste and Self-Respect Marriages devoid of any such rituals.

Periyar, a Feminist

Periyar was critical of patriarchy. He condemned child-marriage and the devadasi system (institution of temple girls). Right from 1929, when the Self-respect Conferences began to voice its concern over the plight of women, Periyar had been emphasising women's right to divorce and property. Periyar objected to terms like "giving in marriage". This, he said, treats woman as a thing. He wants it substituted

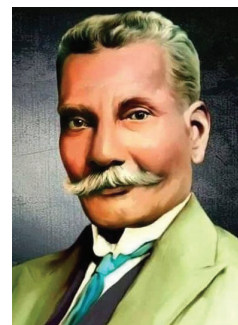
by "*valkaithunai*," (companion) a word for marriage taken from the Tirukkural. Periyar's most important work on this subject is *Why the Woman is Enslaved?*

Periyar believed that property rights for women would provide them a social status and protection. He welcomed equal rights for males and females in property, guardianship and adoption. He was a strong champion of birth control and contraception, and said that motherhood was a burden to women.

In 1989, Government of Tamil Nadu fulfilled the dream of radical reformers by the introduction of the Hindu Succession Tamil Nadu Amendment Act of 1989, which ensured the equal rights to ancestral property for women in inheritance. This Act became a trendsetter and led to similar legislation at the national level.

Rettaimalai Srinivasan

Rettaimalai Srinivasan (1859–1945), popularly known as Grandpa (Thatha), was born in 1859 at Kanchipuram. He fought for social justice, equality and civil rights of the marginalised in the caste order. He was honoured with such titles as Rao Sahib (1926), Rao Bahadur (1930) and Divan Bahadur (1936) for his selfless social services. His autobiography, *Jeeviya Saritha Surukkam* (A Brief Autobiography), published in 1939, is one of the earliest autobiographies.



Rettaimalai
Srinivasan

Rettaimalai Srinivasan who had experienced the horrors of untouchability worked for the progress of the deprived castes. He founded the Adi Dravida Mahajana Sabha in 1893. He served as president of the Scheduled Castes' Federation and the Madras Provincial Depressed Classes' Federation. He constantly engaged in discussions with leaders of the Indian National Congress and the Justice Party

on questions involving the depressed castes. Rettaimalai Srinivasan met Gandhi in South Africa and was closely associated with him. He became a member of the Madras Legislative Council in 1923 and influenced the Justice Party to take affirmative action to safeguard the interests of the depressed and deprived sections of the society.

A close associate of Dr B.R. Ambedkar, he participated in the first and second Round Table Conferences held in London (1930 and 1931) and voiced the opinions of the marginalised sections of the society. He was a signatory to the Poona Pact of 1932.

M.C. Rajah

Mylai Chinnathambi Raja (1883–1943), popularly known as M.C. Rajah, was one of the prominent leaders from the “depressed class”. Rajah started his career as a teacher and wrote different textbooks for schools and colleges. He was one of the founding members of the South Indian Liberal Federation (Justice Party). He became the first elected Legislative Council Member (1920–26) from the depressed classes in Madras province. He functioned as the Deputy Leader of Justice Party in the Madras Legislative Council.



M.C. Rajah

Later, he left the Justice Party. M.C. Rajah demanded abolition of untouchability and organised a number of political meetings and conferences for the “untouchable castes” to have access to public wells and pathways to burial grounds. In addition, he advocated the use of such as terms, *Adi-Dravida* and *Adi-Andhra*. In 1928, he founded the All India Depressed Classes Association and was its long time leader. Rajah had earlier called for separate electorate; but after the Poona Pact, he supported the idea of joint electorates.

10.5

Labour Movements in Tamil Nadu



Labour Statue in Marina Beach

The First World War (1914–18) provided stimulus to industrial growth in India. These industries, catering to war time needs, had employed a huge number of workers. At the end of the War there were retrenchments across the industries, as the war time requirements receded. Combined with high prices, this gave a momentum to the labour movement. The nationalists realising the value of organised labour power began to support the cause of labour. B.P. Wadia, M. Singaravelar, Thiru. Vi. Kalyanasundaram and others initiated the formation of labour unions in the Madras Presidency. In 1918, India’s first organised trade union, the Madras Labour Union, was formed.

The first All India Trade Union Conference (AITUC) was held on 31 October 1920 in Bombay. The delegates discussed several resolutions. These included a demand for protection from police interference in labour disputes, the maintenance of an unemployment register, restriction on exporting foodstuffs, compensation for injuries, and health insurance. In addition, the delegates demanded that Indian workers be given some representation in the government, just as employers had representatives on legislative councils.

M. Singaravelar (1860–1946), was a pioneer in the labour movement activities in the Madras presidency. He was born in Madras and graduated from the Presidency

College, University of Madras. He advocated Buddhism in his early life. He knew many languages, including Tamil, English, Urdu, Hindi, German, French and Russian and wrote about the ideas of Karl Marx, Charles Darwin,



Singaravelar

Herbert Spencer and Albert Einstein in Tamil. He organised the first ever celebration of May Day in 1923. He was one of the early leaders of the Communist Party of India. He published a Tamil newspaper, *Thozhilalan* (*Worker*) to address the problems of the working class. He was closely associated with Periyar and the Self-Respect Movement.

10.6 Language Agitation before Indian Independence

In general, language is a dominant symbol of identity and it is associated with culture and sentiments of any society. Tamil regained its prominence in the latter half of the nineteenth and early twentieth century. Maraimalai Adigal's Pure Tamil Movement, the language reforms of Periyar and Tamil Isai Movement helped to galvanise the Tamil language. Tamil renaissance that led the Dravidian consciousness made a great intervention in the development of modern Tamil language and its art forms. Agamic temples did not permit rituals in Tamil. Tamil songs had a marginal place in musical concerts. Abraham Pandithar systematically studied the history of Tamil music and attempted to reconstruct the ancient Tamil musical system. He founded the Tanjore Sangitha Vidya Mahajana Sangam in 1912 and it became the kernel of the Tamil Isai Movement (Tamil Music Movement). The movement gave importance to the singing of Tamil compositions in music concerts. The first Tamil Isai Conference was held in 1943, to discuss the status of Tamil music.

The implementation of Hindi as a compulsory language in Tamil Nadu, at various points of time, was seen as a threat to Tamil language and culture. C. Rajaji, the Premier of Madras Presidency, introduced Hindi as a compulsory subject in schools. This created a stiff opposition in Madras province. Periyar declared that the introduction of Hindi over Tamil would deny the Dravidians of their job opportunities. Maraimalai Adigal pointed out that the Tamil language would suffer with the introduction of Hindi. The anti-Hindi campaigners considered it an ideological battle against Brahminism and the hegemony of Sanskrit over Tamil. They saw Sanskrit as a vehicle for propagation of Brahmanical ideology, thereby preserving the caste hierarchies and gender inequalities. The agitation was marked by massive protest meetings, demonstrations, and hunger strikes. Tens of thousands of people took part in the agitation.

10.7 Women's Movements

There were several streams of women's movements and organisations established in the early twentieth century to address the question of women empowerment in Madras Presidency. Women's India Association (WIA) and All India Women's Conference (AIWC) are the important among them in Tamil Nadu. WIA was started in 1917 by Annie Besant, Dorothy Jinarajadasa and Margaret Cousins at Adyar, Madras. The Association published pamphlets and bulletins in different languages to detail the problems of personal hygiene, marriage laws, voting rights, child care and women's role in the public. In the meantime, WIA formed the All India Women's Conference (AIWC) in 1927 to address the problem of women's education and recommended that the government implement various policies for the uplift of women.

Women's liberation was one of the important objectives of the Self-Respect Movement. Self-respecters led by Periyar E.V.R. worked for gender equality and gender sensitisation of the society. The movement provided a space for

women to share their ideas. There were several women activists in the movement. Muthulakshmi Ammaiyar, Nagammai, Kannamma, Nilavathi, Muvalur Ramamirtham, Rukmani Ammal, Alarmelmangai Thayammal, Nilambikai, and Sivakami Chidambaranar are prominent among them.



**Muvalur
Ramamirtham**

There was a custom of dedicating young girls to the Hindu temples as a servant of God, known as *devadasi*. Though intended as a service to god it soon got corrupted leading to extensive immorality and abuse of the women. Dr. Muthulakshmi Ammaiyar, was in the forefront of the campaign pressing for a legislation to abolish this devadasi system. The Madras Devadasis (Prevention of Dedication) Act 1947 was enacted by the government.

In 1930, Muthulakshmi Ammaiyar introduced in the Madras Legislative Council a Bill on the “prevention of the dedication of women to Hindu temples in the Presidency of Madras”. The Bill, which later became the Devadasi Abolition Act, declared the “pottukattu ceremony” in the precincts of Hindu temples or any other place of worship unlawful, gave legal sanction to devadasis to contract marriage, and prescribed a minimum punishment of five years’ imprisonment for those found guilty of aiding and abetting the devadasi system. The Bill had to wait for over 15 years to become an Act.

SUMMARY

- Nineteenth century India encountered a process of introspection among Indian intellectuals due to the colonial intervention and the rise of rationalism. This led to the Indian renaissance.
- In Tamil Nadu, the proliferation of the printing press acted as a catalyst for the publication and spread of secular ancient Tamil literature.
- Tamil scholars in the nineteenth century worked hard to publish Tamil classics. These triggered an intellectual revolution and it was popularly known as Tamil renaissance.
- The transformation not only revived Tamil language and literature. It challenged the prevailing caste hierarchy and influenced the rise of Dravidian consciousness and established Tamil as a language of the Dravidian family.
- The Justice Party established in 1916 voiced the problems of non-Brahmin in the Madras Presidency. The party introduced significant reforms such as communal representation, women’s franchise rights, and Hindu Religious Endowment Board.
- Periyar E.V. Ramasamy, the pioneer of the Self-Respect Movement, critiqued fundamentalism and promoted rationalism among people for the better construction of human society. He reformed Tamil society, gave special attention to the women empowerment and did an extensive language reform for the betterment of Tamil language and culture.
- Concurrently, Thatha Rettaimalai Srinivasan worked for the development of depressed castes, and the labour movement addressed the problems of the working classes.
- Meanwhile, Tamil Pure Movement and Tamil Music Movement promoted and preserved Tamil language.
- Ultimately, the rational ideas of Tamil Nadu became a model for constructive developments of the modern Indian state.

A-Z GLOSSARY

evangelical	Christian groups that believe that the teaching of the Bible and persuading others to join them is extremely important	சுவிசேஷர்கள், நற்செய்தியாளர்
hegemony	leadership or dominance, especially by one country or social group over others	மேலாதிக்கம்
resurgence	renewal, revival	எழுச்சி
linguists	a person skilled in languages	மொழியியலாளர்கள்
exemplified	be a typical example of	நிரூபிக்கப்படும்
marginalised	a person, group concept treated as insignificant or sidelined	ஒதுக்கப்பட்ட
irked	irritated, annoyed	எரிச்சலூட்டும்
debunking	expose the falseness or hollowness of (a myth, idea or belief)	ஒழித்துக்கட்டும்
trounced	defeat heavily in a contest	பருதோல்வியுறச் செய்தல்
critiquing	evaluate in a detailed and analytical way	விமர்சிப்பது
iniquitous	grossly unfair and morally wrong	அநீதியான
pseudonym	a fictitious name, especially one used by an author	புனைபெயர்
rechristened	give a new name to	பெயரிடப்பட்டு
patriarchy	A society or institution organised according to the principles or practices of male domination	ஆணாதிக்கச் சமுதாயம்
masculinity	possession of the qualities traditionally associated with men	ஆண்மை



EXERCISE

I. Choose the correct answer

- _____ was the pioneer of social Reformers in India.
a) C.W. Damotharanar
b) Periyar
c) Raja Rammohan Roy
d) Maraimalai Adigal
- _____ established a full-fledged printing press in 1709, at Tranquebar.
a) Caldwell b) F.W. Ellis
c) Ziegenbalg d) Meenakshisundaram
- _____ was the official newspaper of the Self Respect Movement.
a) KudiArasu b) Puratchi
c) Viduthalai d) Paguththarivu
- Periyar wanted religion to be replaced by _____.
a) Nationalism b) Iconoclasm
c) Rationalism d) Spiritualism



- _____ founded Adi Dravida Mahajana Sabha in 1893.
a) Rettaimalai Srinivasan
b) B. R. Ambedkar
c) Rajaji
d) M. C. Rajah
- India's first organised trade union, the Madras Labour Union was formed in _____.
a) 1918 b) 1917 c) 1916 d) 1914
- _____ was established by the Justice Party Government for the selection of Government officials.
a) Staff Selection Board
b) Public Service Commission
c) Provincial Staff Recruitment Board
d) Staff Selection Commission
- _____ was the first elected Legislative Council Member from the depressed class in Madras Province.
a) M. C. Rajah
b) Rettaimalai Srinivasan
c) T.M. Nair
d) P. Varadarajulu

II. Fill in the blanks

- _____ was the first non-European language that went into print.
- The College of Fort St. George was founded by _____.
- _____ is considered the father of Tamil linguistic purism.
- _____ was the first to approve participation of women in the electoral politics.
- The name Suriyanarayana Sastri changed in Tamil as _____.
- _____ gave prominence to Tamil music.
- The first Woman Legislator in India was _____.

III Choose the correct statement

- (i) Thirukkural was one of the earliest Tamil literary texts to be published in 1812.
(ii) Maraimalai Adigal collected and edited different palm leaf manuscripts of the Tamil grammars and literature.
(iii) Robert Caldwell established the close affinity between the Dravidian languages in contrast with Sanskrit and also established the antiquity of Tamil.
(iv) Thiru. Vi. Kalyanasundaram was an early pioneer in Trade union movement.
a) (i) and (ii) are correct
b) (i) and (iii) are correct
d) (iv) is correct
e) (ii) and (iii) are correct
- (i) Margret Cousins was one of the founders of Women's India Association.
(ii) Periyar spent his entire life campaigning against superstitions through Thinkers or Rationalists Forums he had formed.
(iii) Singaravelar was a staunch supporter of the Hindu Mahasabha
(iv) Periyar emphasised that the caste system in South India is linked with the arrival of Brahmins from the North.

- (iii) and (iv) are correct
- (ii), (iii) and (iv) are correct
- (i), (ii) and (iv) are correct
- (ii) and (iii) are correct

- Assertion (A):** The Justice Party continued to remain in government from 1920-1937 in Madras Presidency.

Reason (R): The Congress Party boycotted the Madras Legislature during this period of Dyarchy.

- Both A and R are correct
- A is correct, but R is not the correct explanation
- Both A and R are wrong
- R is correct, but it has no relevance to A

- Assertion (A):** As World War I was in progress, the British Government was considering the introduction of representative institutions for Indians after the war.

Reason (R): In 1920, Dyarchy as a form of Government was introduced in the provinces.

- A is correct, but R is not the correct reason
- Both A and R are wrong
- Both A and R are right
- A is wrong and R has no relevance to A

IV. Match the following

- Dravidian Home - Maraimalai Adigal
- Thozhilalan* - Rettaimalai Srinivasan
- Tani Tamil Iyakkam - Singaravelar
- Jeeviya Saritha Surukkam - Natesanar

V. Answer briefly

- Write a note on Tamil Renaissance.
- Highlight the contribution of Caldwell for the cause of South Indian languages.
- List out the personalities who contributed to the revival of Tamil literature through their writings.

4. Discuss the importance of Hindu Religious Endowment Act passed by the Justicite ministry ?
5. What do you know of the Cheranmahadevi Gurukulam incident?
6. Name the newspapers published by the South Indian Liberal Foundation.
7. Estimate Periyar as a feminist
8. Explain the proceedings of All India Trade Union Congress Conference held in 1920.

VI. Answer the questions given under each caption

1. Periyar E.V.R
 - a) When did Periyar found Dravidar Kazhagam?
 - b) What were the Newspapers and Journals run by Periyar?
 - c) Why was Periyar known as Vaikom hero?
 - d) Which was the most important work of Periyar?
2. Labour Movement in Tamilnadu
 - a) Highlight the factors that caused the birth of Trade Union Movement in Madras.
 - b) Identify the three prominent persons associated with the Madras Labour Union.
 - c) Where was the first conference of All India Trade Union Congress held?
 - d) Who organised the first ever celebration of May Day in Madras and which year?
3. Maraimalai Adigal
 - a) Name the Sangam texts for which Maraimalai Adigal wrote commentaries.
 - b) Name the Journal where he worked as a young man.
 - c) Why did he oppose imposition of Hindi?
 - d) Who were the key influences in Maraimalai Adigal's life?

VII. Answer in detail

1. Attempt an essay on the foundation and development of Tamil Renaissance in the 19th Century.
2. Describe the background for the formation of the Justice Party and point out its contribution to the cause of social justice.
3. Estimate Periyar E.V.R's decisive contribution to the social transformation of Tamil Nadu.

VIII. Students Activity

1. Students can be taught to distinguish between Labour Movement and Trade Union Movement. Project work on the activities of local trade union organisations may be done by students.
2. Students can compile the activities of the local writers' associations or women's collectives.



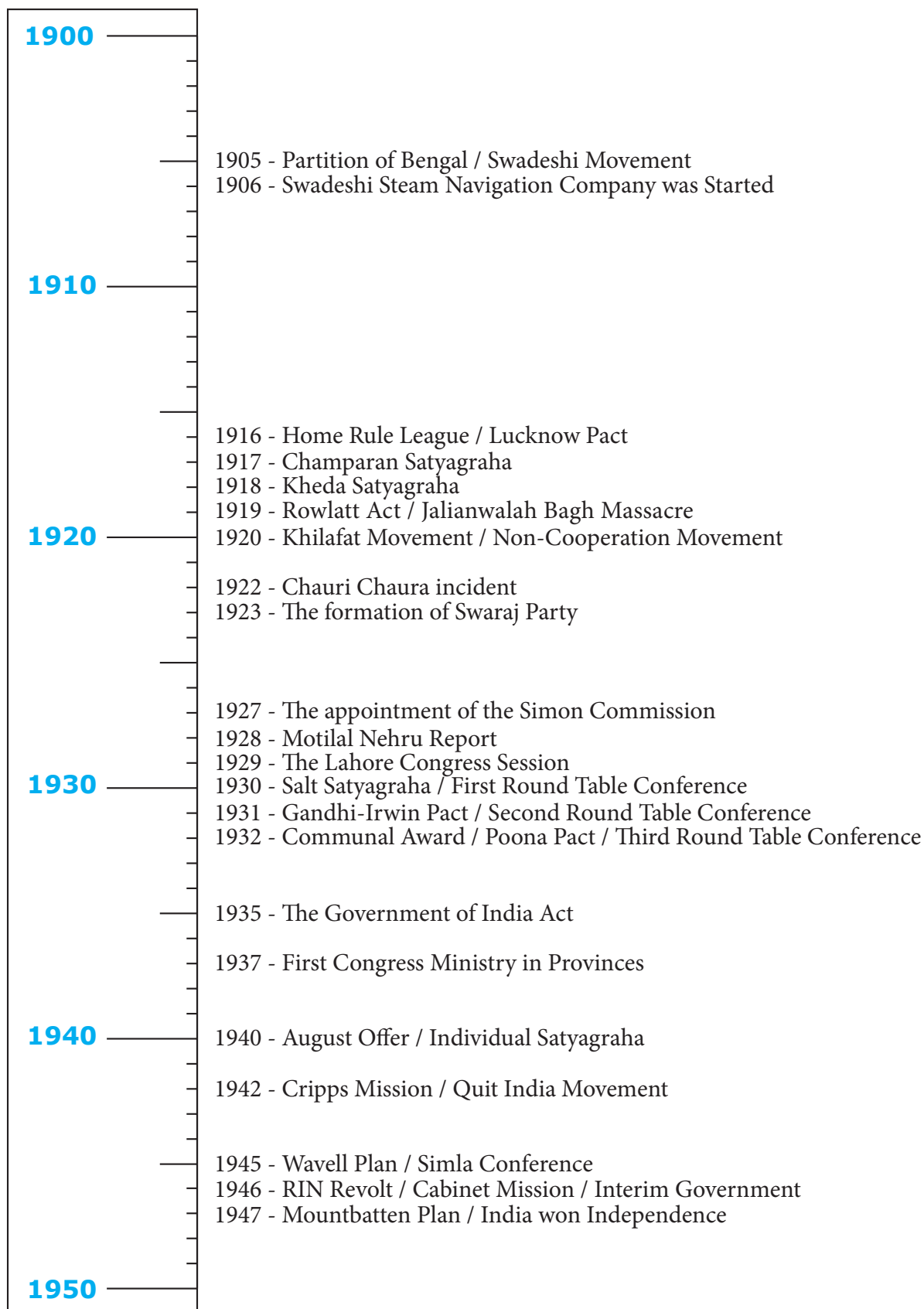
REFERENCE BOOKS

1. K. Nambi Arooran, *Tamil Renaissance and Dravidian Nationalism 1905–1944*. Madurai: Koodal Publishers, 1980.
2. V. Geetha and S.V. Rajadurai, *Towards a Non-Brahmin Millennium: From Iyothee Thass to Periyar*. Calcutta: Samya, 1998.
3. Robert Hardgrave *The Dravidian Movement*. Bombay: Popular Prakashan, 1965.
4. Eugene F. Irschick, *Politics and Social Conflict in South India*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1969.
5. Periyar. E.V. Ramasami, *Women Enslaved*. New Delhi: Critical Quest, 2009.
6. *Thoughts of Periyar E.V.R.: Speeches and Writings of Periyar E.V. Ramasamy*. V. Anaimuthu. Comp. Chennai: Periyar E.V. Ramasamy–Nagammai Education and Research Trust, 1974.

TIME LINE

1 unit = 10 years

Important Events of Indian National Movement (1900-1947)





GEOGRAPHY



Unit - 6

Physical Geography of Tamil Nadu



Learning Objectives

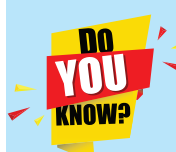
- To know the history of formation of the state
- To study the major physiographic divisions of the state
- To understand the nature of climate, soils and natural vegetation
- To familiarise the students with the geographical conditions of their living places
- To know the major natural disasters and their occurrences in Tamil Nadu



Introduction

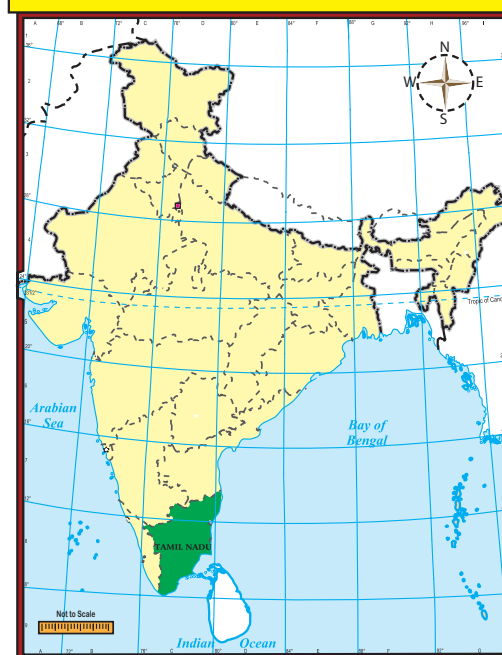
The study of one's own region is the first step to become a global citizen. The purpose of studying our local territory is to understand life in our environment. In the last five lessons, you have learnt about various geographical characteristics of our country. In this lesson and those that follow, we shall learn about the geography of Tamil Nadu. You will get to know about the etymology, history of formation, location, size, physical divisions, rivers, climate, soil and natural vegetation of Tamil Nadu in this chapter.

Our state Tamil Nadu has a hoary past with a variety of cultural practices and traditions. Its exquisite physiography and climate makes our state unique in India. It has long and sunny beaches, waterfalls, hills, forests and varied flora and fauna.



As per, the States Reorganisation Act, 1956, state boundaries were reorganised on some linguistic basis.

LOCATION OF TAMIL NADU IN INDIA



- Name the first state of India created on linguistic basis.
- Why was the capital of Tamil Nadu renamed?
- What is the meaning of the word 'Chennai'?

6.1 Formation of Tamil Nadu

During Sangam age, the Tamizham was ruled by three great emperors – Cheras, Cholas and Pandyas – and virtuous kings ruling small kingdoms like Adhiyaman and Pari. For a short time, the Tamil country was ruled by the Kalabras, but not much about their time is recorded or known.

After the Kalabras, the Tamil country came under the control of the Pallavas, Cholas, Pandyas, Marathas, Mughals and Vijayanagara empires in succession until the British took administrative control over the entire country, starting from Madras.

During the British period, our country was divided into three presidencies, namely Madras, Bombay and Calcutta for political and military purposes. Tamil Nadu and parts of Andhra Pradesh, Kerala, Karnataka and Orissa (Odisha) constituted the Madras Presidency. After independence, following the linguistic division of states, Telugu-speaking areas were bifurcated from the Madras state. After bifurcation, there were only 13 districts in Madras state. The Madras state was renamed as Tamil Nadu by C.N. Annadurai, former Chief Minister of Tamil Nadu, on January 14, 1969.

6.1.1 Location and Size

Tamil Nadu is one of the 29 states of India, located in the southern most part of the country. This landmass extends from 8°4'N to 13°35'N latitudes and from 76°18'E to 80°20'E longitudes. Its eastern and western extremities are defined by the Point Calimere and the hills of Anaimalai respectively. The northern extremity of the state is marked by Pulicat lake and the southernmost point is Cape Comorin.

It covers an area of 1,30,058 sq.km and is the 11th largest state in India. It covers 4% of the area of our country.

6.1.2 Boundaries and Neighbours

Tamil Nadu is bounded by Bay of Bengal in the east, Kerala in the west, Andhra Pradesh in the north, Karnataka in the northwest and

Indian Ocean in the south. Gulf of Mannar and Palk Strait separate Tamil Nadu from the Island of Sri Lanka, which lies to the southeast of India. The state has 1,076 km long coastline, the second-longest in India after Gujarat.

6.1.3 Administrative Divisions

Already we have learnt that the state of Tamil Nadu had only 13 districts at the time of its formation. After that, the state was reorganised several times for the purpose of administrative convenience. At present there are 35 districts in Tamil Nadu, including the newly created districts such as Kallakurichi, Tenkasi and Chengalpet. The administrative divisions of the state are given in the following table.

Divisions	Numbers
Districts	35 (32+3)
Revenue Divisions	76
Taluks	226
Firkas	1,127
Revenue Villages	16,564
Municipal Corporations	15
Municipalities	125
Panchayat Unions (Blocks)	385
Town Panchayats	561
Village Panchayats	12,618
Lok Sabha Constituencies	39
Assembly Constituencies	234
Source: maps of india.com 2019	

Activity

- Find out the coastal districts of Tamil Nadu with the help of a map.
- Group the districts of Tamil Nadu which share their boundary with the states of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Kerala separately.

Physiographic Divisions

We have learnt about endogenetic and exogenetic processes in 9th std. Have you ever thought what kind of landforms on which you live? Have you ever noticed the landscapes,

TAMIL NADU - POLITICAL



All districts of Tamil Nadu except the Chennai, The Nilgiris and Kanyakumari were bifurcated at different points of time.



Between in which latitude and longitude, is your school located?



you come across while travelling from one place to another? Have you ever wondered how these landforms were formed? Let's see the major physical features of Tamil Nadu and their characteristics.

Tamil Nadu is located on the Peninsular Plateau, known as Deccan Plateau. It is also a part of the ancient Gondwana land that broke away 135 million years ago during Cretaceous Period. Tamil Nadu has many unique land features which include high eroded mountains, shallow deep valleys and plains. The topography of the state slopes towards east. Based on the major differences in relief, Tamil Nadu is divided into the physical divisions of Western Ghats, Eastern Ghats, Plateaus, Coastal and Inland plains.

6.2 Western Ghats

Western Ghats extends from the Niligris in the north to Marunthuvazh Malai at Swamithope in Kanyakumari district in the south. Height of the Western Ghats ranges from 2,000 to 3,000 metres. It covers an area of about 2,500 sq.km. Though the Western Ghats is a continuous range, it has some passes. The passes are Palghat, Shencottah, Aralvaimozhi, and Achankoil. The Niligris, Anaimalai, Palani hills, Cardamom hills, Varusanadu, Andipatti and Agasthiyar hills are the major hills of Western Ghats.

6.2.1 Nilgiri Hills



Doddabetta

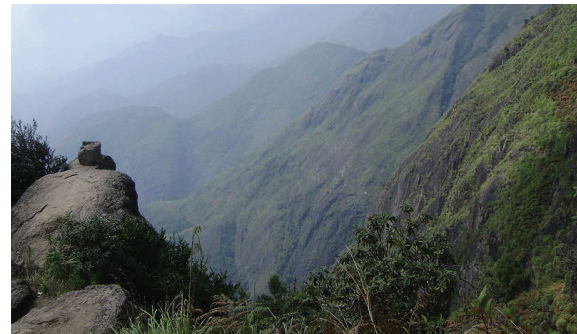
The Nilgiri hills is located in the Northwestern part of Tamil Nadu. It consists of 24 peaks with more than 2,000 metres

height. Doddabetta is the highest peak (2,637 metres) of this hills followed by Mukkuruthi (2,554 metres). Ooty and Coonoor are the major hill stations located on this hills. It has more than 2,700 species of flowering plants and the state animal Nilgiri Tahr is found in this hill. Much of the Nilgiris natural montane grasslands and shrublands have been disturbed or destroyed by extensive tea plantations and cattle grazing.

6.2.2 Anaimalai

Anaimalai is located in the border of Tamil Nadu and Kerala. It is located to the south of Palghat Gap. Anaimalai Tiger Reserve, Aliyar Reserved Forest, Valparai hill station, Kadamparai hydroelectric Power Plant are located on this hills. Aliyar and Tirumurthy dams are located at the foothills of this range.

6.2.3 Palani Hills



Palani Hills

Palani hills are the eastward extension of the Western Ghats. Except its western part, these hills are located in Dindigul district. Vandaravu (2,533 metres) is the highest peak in the Palani hills. Vembadi Shola (2,505 metres) is its second highest peak. The hill station of Kodaikanal (2,150 metres) lies in the south central portion of the range.

6.2.4 Cardamom Hills

These hills are also known as Yela Mala hills located in the southwestern part of Tamil Nadu. It acquires its name from the cardamom spice, which is commonly grown here. Pepper and coffee are the other crops cultivated over the hills. They meet the Anaimalai hills in the northwest, the Palani



Peaks in Western Ghats	Height(m)
Doddabetta	2,637
Mukkuruthi	2,554
Vembadisolai	2,505
Perumalmalai	2,234
Kottaimtalai	2,019
Pagasura	1,918

hills in the northeast and Varusanadu and Andipatti hills in the southeast.

6.2.5 Varusanadu and Andipatti Hills

Another eastward extension of Western Ghats is Varusanadu and Andipatti hills. Megamalai (the highway mountain), Kalugumalai, Kurangani hill station, and Suruli and Kumbakarai waterfalls are found on these hills. Srivilliputhur Grizzled Squirrel Wild life Sanctuary is located in the southern slope of these hills in Virudhunagar district. Vaigai river and its tributaries originate in this region.

6.2.6 Pothigai Hills

Its major part lies in Tirunelveli district with its southern slope in the Kanyakumari district. Pothigai hills are called with different names such as the Shiva Jothi Parvath, Agasthiyar hills and Southern Kailash. These hills feature richest biodiversity in the Western Ghats. This area is known for its rich evergreen forest, waterfalls and ancient temples. Kalakkad Mundanthurai Tiger Reserve is located in this region.

6.2.7 Mahendragiri Hills

This continuous range is situated along the border of Kanyakumari and Tirunelveli districts and is a part of the southern range of the Western Ghats. Its average height is 1,645 metres. ISRO Propulsion Complex, a test facility for Indian Space Research Organisation's launch vehicles and satellite propulsion systems, is situated on the lower slopes of this mountain.

6.3 The Eastern Ghats

Unlike Western Ghats, Eastern Ghats is a discontinuous and irregular one. It is dissected at many places by the rivers, which drain

into the Bay of Bengal. Its height ranges from 1,100 to 1,600 metres. These hills separate the plains from plateaus. Javadhu, Servarayan, the Kalrayan, Kollimalai and Pachaimalai are the major hills of the Eastern Ghats of Tamil Nadu and are located in northern districts of the state.

6.3.1 Javadhu Hills

Javadhu hills are an extension of the Eastern Ghats spread across parts of Vellore and Tiruvannamalai districts and separates these two districts. Many peaks with the height of 1,100–1,150 metres are located in this range. Melpattu is its highest peak. The Vainu Bappu Observatory (VBO) Kavalur, which began operations in 1967, is located on these hills. Many parts of this range are covered with bluish grey granites. It is noted for its fruit bearing trees, medicinal herbs and sandalwoods. Due to illegal logging, sandalwood trees are disappeared now.

6.3.2 Kalvarayan Hills

The name 'Kalvarayan' comes from the word 'Karalar', the ancient name of the present tribes. It is another major range of hills in the Eastern Ghats of Tamil Nadu. This range, along with the Pachaimalai, Aralvaimalai, Javadhu and Servarayan hills, separates the river basins of Cauvery and Palar. The height of this hill ranges from 600 to 1,220 metres. These hills have two sections. The northern section is referred as the Chinna Kalvarayan and the southern one the Periya Kalvarayan. The average height of Chinna Kalvarayan is 825 metres and the Periya Kalvarayan is 1,220 metres.

6.3.3 Servarayan Hills

It is a mountain range located near the Salem city with the height ranging from 1,200

Peaks in Eastern Ghats	Height(m)
Shervarayan temple	1,623
Mazhamalai	1,500
Urgamalai	1,486
Kuttirayan	1,395
Muganur	1,279
Valsamalai	1,034



Districts	Hills
Coimbatore	Maruthamalai, Velliangiri and Anaimalai
Dharmapuri	Theertha malai, Chitteri and Vathalmalai
Dindigul	Pazhamalai and Kodaikanal
Erode	Chenni hills and Sivan hills
Vellore	Javadhu, Yelagiri and Rathinamalai hills
Namakkal	Kolli hills
Salem	Servarayan, Kanjamalai and Chalk hills
Villupuram	Kalvarayan and Gingee hills
Perambalur	Pachaimalai
Kanyakumari	Marunthuvazhmalai
Tirunelveli	Mahendragiri and Agasthiyarmalai
The Nilgiris	Nilgiri hills

Major hills in Tamil Nadu

to 1,620 metres. The name of the range comes from a local deity, Servarayan. The highest peak in the southern part of the Eastern Ghats is located in this range. The peak is Solaikaradu and its height is 1,620 metres. The hill station Yercaud, which is known as poor man's Ooty, is located on this range. Servarayan temple is its highest point (1623 metres).

6.3.4 Kolli Hills

It is a small mountain range located in Namakkal district. It covers an area of about 2,800 sq.km. It rises up to 1300 metres. This is a mountain range that runs almost parallel to the east coast of South India. Arpaleeswarar temple located on this range is an important pilgrim centre. It has the largest cover of evergreen or shola forest when compared to other parts of the Eastern Ghats. Several coffee plantations, fruits, flowers and silver-oak estates are found in this region.



Why are mountain heights measured from mean sea level and not from ground level?

6.3.5 Pachaimalai

It is the lowest hill range, spreads over the districts of Perambalur, Tiruchirapalli and Salem. In Tamil language, pachai means green. The vegetation in this range is greener than the vegetative cover of the other hills in this region. Hence it is named as '**Pachai malai**'. Jackfruit is a popular seasonal agricultural product of this hills.



1. Name the hill resorts of Western Ghats and Eastern Ghats in Tamil Nadu.
2. Is Ooty located on Western Ghats?
3. Name the hill stations located in Western and Eastern Ghats of Tamil Nadu.
4. Why is the Nilgiri hills called as Blue Mountains?
5. What is the kind of landform on which you live and what is its height?

6.4 Plateaus

Plateaus of Tamil Nadu are located between the Western Ghats and the Eastern Ghats. It is roughly triangular in shape and covers an area of about 60,000 sq.km. Its height increases from east to west. Its height ranges between 150 and 600 metres. This plateau is broader in the north and very narrow in the south. It has many subdivisions.

Bharamahal plateau is a part of the Mysore plateau situated in the northwestern part of Tamil Nadu. Its height ranges from 350 to 710 metres. Dharmapuri and Krishnagiri districts are located in this region.

Coimbatore plateau lies between the Nilgiris and Dharmapuri districts. Its height varies from 150 to 450 metres. This region includes Salem, Coimbatore and Erode districts. The area of this plateau is about 2,560 sq.km. Its height varies from 352 to 710 metres. Moyar river separates this plateau from the Mysore plateau.





Rivers like Bhavani, Noyyal and Amaravathi, which originate from Western Ghats, form valleys in this region. Many intermontane plateaus are found in the region of the Nilgiris. Sigur plateau is one such plateau.

Madurai plateau found in Madurai district extends up to the foothills of the Western Ghats. Vaigai and Thamirabarani basins are located in this zone.

6.5 Plains

The plains of Tamil Nadu may be divided into two, namely inland plains and coastal plains. Inland plains are drained by the rivers Palar, Ponnaiyar, Cauvery and Thamirabarani. Cauvery plains is one of the most important fertile plains of the state. The plains of Cauvery is found in Salem, Erode, Karur, Tiruchirappalli, Pudukottai, Thanjavur, Tiruvarur and Nagapattinam districts.

Coastal plains of Tamil Nadu are also called Coromandel or Cholamandalam (land of Cholas) plain, which extends from Chennai to Kanyakumari. It is formed by the rivers that flow towards east drain in the Bay of Bengal. It is more than 80 kilometres wide at some places. Though it is an emerged coast, some parts are submerged into the sea. The sand dunes formed along the coast of Ramanathapuram and Thoothukudi districts are called **Teri**. Coral rocks are found at the head of Gulf of Mannar in the east coastal plain.

6.5.1 Beaches



Marina Beach

The Coromandel Coast along the Bay of Bengal consists of many beautiful and exotic beaches. The golden sands of Tamil Nadu

beaches are scattered with palm and casuarinas groves. Marina and Elliot beaches of Chennai, Kovalam and Silver beaches of Kanyakumari are some of the famous beaches in Tamil Nadu.

6.6 Drainage

Rivers of Tamil Nadu are its lifeline. Though it has many rivers, the rivers of Cauvery, Palar, Ponnaiyar, Vaigai and Thamirabarani are the notable ones. Most of the rivers of Tamil Nadu originate from Western Ghats and flow towards east and drain into the Bay of Bengal. All the rivers of the state are non-perennial except Thamirabarani. It is perennial as it is fed by both the southwest and northeast monsoons.

6.6.1 Cauvery

The river Cauvery originates at Talacauvery in the Brahmagiri hills of Kodagu (Coorg) district of Karnataka in the Western Ghats. About 416 km of its course falls in Tamil Nadu. It serves as the boundary between Karnataka and Tamil Nadu for a distance of 64 km. It forms Hogenakkal waterfalls in Dharmapuri district. Mettur Dam, also called as the Stanley Reservoir, is located across this river in Salem district. A tributary called Bhavani joins Cauvery on the right bank about 45 km from the Mettur Reservoir. Thereafter, it takes easterly course to enter into the plains of Tamil Nadu. Two more tributaries, Noyyal and Amaravathi, confluence the river on the right bank at Thirumukkudal 10 km from Karur. The river is wider in this region, where it is called as 'Agandra Cauvery'.

In Tiruchirappalli district, the river branches into two parts. The northern branch is called Coleroon or Kollidam and



Pamban, Hare, Krusadai, Nallathanni Theevu, Pullivasal, Srirangam, Upputanni, Island Grounds, Kattupalli Island, Quibble Island and Vivekananda Rock Memorial are some major islands of Tamil Nadu

the southern branch remains Cauvery. From here, the Cauvery delta begins. After flowing for about 16 km, the two branches join again to form the '**Srirangam Island**'. The Grand Anaicut, also called as Kallanai was built across the river Cauvery. After Kallanai, the river breaks into a large number of distributaries and forms a network all over the delta. The network of distributaries within the delta of Cauvery in the coast is called as the '**Garden of Southern India**'. It merges into Bay of Bengal to the south of Cuddalore.

6.6.2 Palar

The Palar river rises beyond Talagavara village in the Kolar district of Karnataka. The Palar drains an area of 17,871 sq.km, out of which nearly 57% lies in Tamil Nadu and the rest in the states of Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh. Ponnai, Goundinya Nadhi, Malattar, Cheyyar and Kiliyar are its major tributaries. Its total length is 348 km, out of which 222 km of its course falls in Tamil Nadu. It flows through the districts of Vellore and Kancheepuram before entering into Bay of Bengal near Kuvattur.

6.6.3 Then Pennaiyar/Then Ponnaiyar

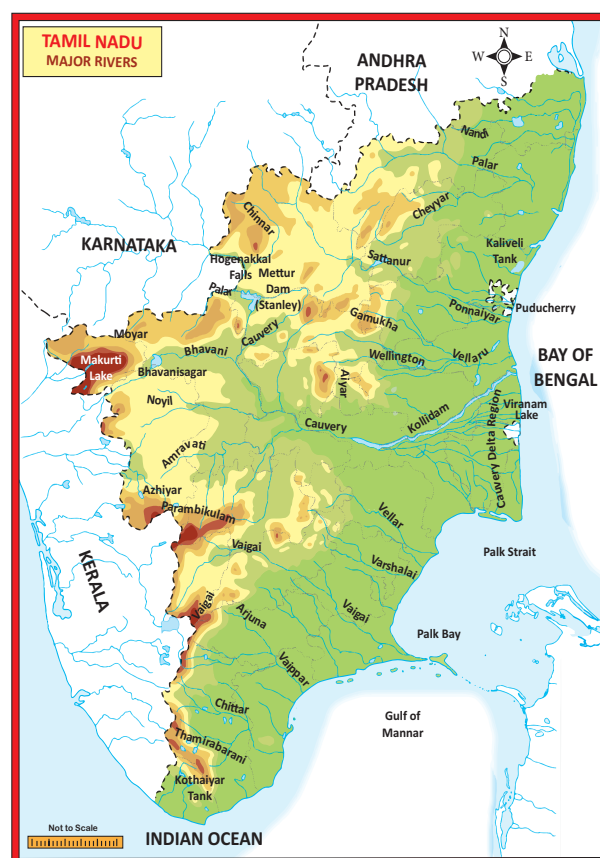
It originates from the eastern slope of Nandi Durga hills in eastern Karnataka. It drains an area of 16,019 sq.km, of which nearly 77% lies in Tamil Nadu. It flows for a distance of 247 km in the southeasterly direction in the districts of Krishnagiri, Dharmapuri, Vellore, Tiruvannamalai, Cuddalore and Villupuram. It branches into two, viz. Gadilam and the Ponnaiyar near Tirukoilur Anaicut. Gadilam joins the Bay of Bengal near Cuddalore and Ponnaiyar near the Union Territory of Puducherry. Chinnar, Markandanadhi, Vaniar and Pambar are its tributaries. Heavy rain at the river's source cause sudden but short-lived floods. The river is extensively dammed for irrigation, especially in Tamil Nadu. There are reservoirs at Krishnagiri and Sathanur across this river. The **Ponnaiyar** is considered sacred by Hindus and festivals are held during the Tamil month of Thai (January–February).

6.6.4 Vaigai

Vaigai river rises from the eastern slopes of the Varusanadu hills of Western Ghats of Tamil Nadu. It drains an area of 7,741 sq.km, which lies entirely in the state of Tamil Nadu. It flows through the districts of Madurai, Sivaganga and Ramanathapuram. Its length is 258 km. It discharges its water into the Ramnad Big Tank and some other small tanks. The surplus water from the tanks is finally discharged into Palk Strait near Ramanathapuram.

6.6.5 Thamirabarani

The name is interpreted as Thamiram (copper) and Varuni (streams of river). The water of this river gives a copper like appearance due to the presence of dissolved suspended red soil. It originates from a peak in Pothigai hills on the Western Ghats above Papanasam in the Ambasamudram taluk. The origin of the river is associated with Sage Agasthiyar. It courses through the districts of Tirunelveli and Thoothukudi and finally flow into the Bay of Bengal near Punnaikayal in Thoothukudi district. Karaiyar, Servalar, Manimuthar, Gadananathi, Pachaiyar, Chittar and Ramanathi are its main tributaries.





District	Waterfalls
Dharmapuri	Hogenakkal
Thirunelveli	Kalyanatheertham, Courtallam
Theni	Kumbakkarai and Suruli
Namakkal	Agayagangai
The Nilgiri	Catherine and Pykara
Salem	Kiliyur
Virudhunagar	Ayyanar
Coimbatore	Vaideki, Sengupathi, Siruvani and Kovaikutralam
Tiruppur	Tirumurthy
Madurai	Kutladampatti
Kanyakumari	Tirparappu, Kaalikesam, Ulakkai and Vattaparai

Major waterfalls in Tamil Nadu

6.7 Climate

You have already learnt that the Tropic of Cancer divides India roughly into two equal parts and the state Tamil Nadu lies to the south of Tropic of Cancer, which is near the Equator. As it receives vertical sunrays, the temperature of the state is relatively high throughout the year. Though the state falls within the hot climatic zone, the east coast of Tamil Nadu enjoys tropical maritime climate. The Bay of Bengal and Indian Ocean influence the climate of the coastal regions. The annual temperature ranges from 18° to 43° and the annual rain fall is 958.5 mm.

While the east coast experiences tropical maritime climate, the western region of the state enjoys the mountainous climate. This climate prevails over the Blue Mountains, Anaimalai and the Kodaikanal hills. Thick forests and high altitude make the climate of these areas cool and pleasant. Thus stations in this region attract thousands of people during the summer season. Low altitude and distance from the sea are the reasons for high temperature and dry conditions in the central part of Tamil Nadu. The migration of vertical sun's rays leads to the formation of different seasons in Tamil Nadu as follows.

Seasons of Tamil Nadu	
Season	Period
Winter Season	January-February
Summer Season	March- May
Southwest Monsoon	June-September
Northeast Monsoon	October -December

6.7.1 Winter Season

During January and February, the vertical rays of the sun fall between the Tropic of Capricorn and the Equator. Hence, Tamil Nadu and India on the whole receive slanting rays from the sun. So, the weather is slightly cooler during these months. The difference between summer and winter temperature is not very high. Winter temperature in Tamil Nadu varies from 15°C to 25°C. However, in the hill stations, the winter temperature drops below 5°C occasionally. Some valleys in the Nilgiris record even 0°C. This drop in temperature leads to the formation of thick mist and frost. This season is practically dry.

6.7.2 Summer Season

The apparent migration of the sun towards north during March, April and May results in the reception of vertical sun's rays by South India. Thus there is a steady rise in temperature from the equator. Hence, Tamil Nadu located to the south of Tropic of Cancer, experiences high temperature. Generally the temperature varies from 30°C to more than 40°C. During this season particularly in the month of May, southern part of the state receives some rainfall from pre-monsoon showers (Mango/Blossom showers) and some parts experience convectional rainfall.



1. What is Agni Nakshatram?
2. Group the districts of Tamil Nadu into low, moderate and heavy rainfall regions.

6.7.3 Southwest Monsoon

The intense heating of the landmass of the north by the sun during March to May creates a well-developed low pressure in North India, which draws wind from the Indian Ocean.

This results in the formation of southwest monsoon. During this season, Tamil Nadu is located in the rain shadow region for the wind, which blows from the Arabian Sea. As a result, Tamil Nadu receives only a meagre rainfall from this monsoon. Rainfall during this season decreases from west to east. Coimbatore plateau receives an average of 50 cm rainfall. However, the southern districts like Kanyakumari, Tirunelveli and The Nilgiris record 50–100 cm rainfall during this period. The rainfall is scanty in the eastern part of the state.

Coriolis Force: An apparent force acts as a result of the earth's rotation deflects moving objects (such as projectiles or air currents) to the right in the northern hemisphere and to the left in the southern hemisphere.

6.7.4 Northeast Monsoon

The northeast monsoon season commences from the month of October and lasts till mid-December. The high pressure created over Central Asia and northern part of India becomes the source for the northeast monsoon winds. The apparent migration of the sun from Tropic of Cancer to the Tropic of Capricorn causes a change in receiving temperature and air pressure during this season. It makes the wind to blow towards Bay of Bengal from North India. After reaching Bay of Bengal, the wind gets deflected by Coriolis force and takes the northeast direction. Hence it is known as northeast monsoon. As the northeast monsoon is a part of returning of southwest monsoon wind, it is also called as the retreating monsoon. This is the main rainy season for Tamil Nadu, accounting for its 48% of annual rainfall. Coastal districts of the state get nearly 60% of their annual rainfall and the interior districts get about 40–50% of the annual rainfall during this season.

Tropical cyclones are common during this season. Cyclone originating from the Bay of Bengal bring heavy rainfall to the east coastal regions of Tamil Nadu. More than 50% of the state's rainfall is received from tropical cyclones during this period and east coastal region

receives 100 to 200 cm of rainfall. The rainfall received by the central and northwestern parts is 50–100 cm. The cyclones sometimes disturb the cultivation of crops and cause severe damage to life and property.



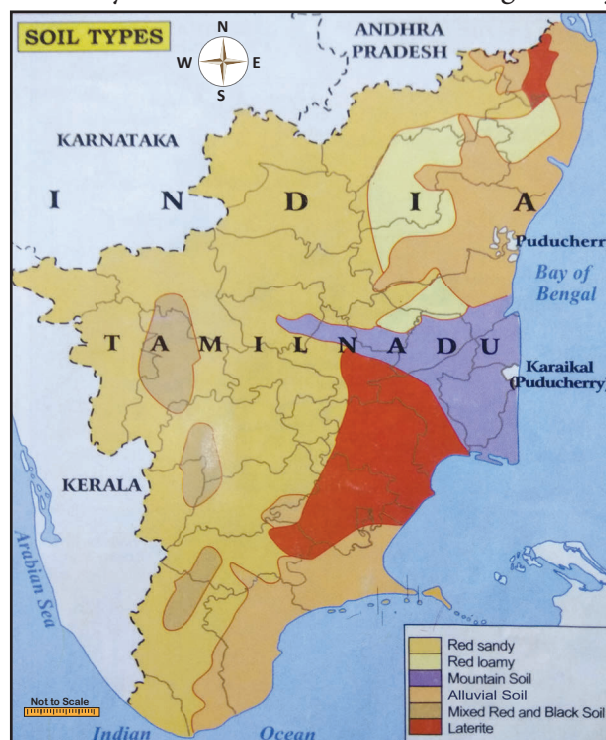
Chinnakallar near Valparai is the 3rd wettest place in India and the wettest place in Tamil Nadu.

6.8 Soils of Tamil Nadu

Soil is the loose material mainly formed by the weathering and erosion of rocks. It forms an important element of agriculture. It provides essential minerals and nutrients for the growth of vegetation. Soil is one of the important non-renewable resources in the world. It takes 300–1,000 years to form two inches of soil. The soil of a place depends on the factors like climate, parent rocks and vegetative cover of the respective places. The soils in Tamil Nadu are broadly classified into five types according to their characteristics. They are alluvial, black, red, laterite and saline soils.

6.8.1 Alluvial Soil

Alluvial soils are formed by the deposition of silt by the rivers. Alluvial soils are generally





fertile as they are rich in minerals such as lime, potassium, magnesium, nitrogen and phosphoric acid. It is deficient in nitrogen and humus. It is porous and loamy. Paddy, sugarcane, banana and turmeric are cultivated in this soil. It is found in the river valley regions and the coastal plains of Tamil Nadu. Generally this type of soil is found in the districts of Thanjavur, Tiruvarur, Nagapattinam, Villupuram, Cuddalore, Tirunelveli and Kanyakumari. It is also found to a small extent along the river valleys in few interior districts.

6.8.2 Black Soil

Black soils are formed by the weathering of igneous rocks. It is also known as regur soil. As cotton grows well in this soil, it is also called as black cotton soil. This soil is developed over the Deccan lava granite region under semi-arid conditions. It is fine textured and clayey in nature. It is poor in phosphoric acid, nitrogen and organic matter. Chief minerals found in this soil are calcium, magnesium, carbonates, potash and lime. Cotton, sorghum, cumbu and fodder crops are the major crops cultivated in the black soil regions of Tamil Nadu. Black soils are found extensively in the districts of Coimbatore, Madurai, Virudhunagar, Tirunelveli and Thoothukudi.

6.8.3 Red Soil

Red soils cover over two-thirds of the total area of Tamil Nadu. They are found particularly in the central districts of the state. This soil is sandy and loamy in texture. However, the characteristic features of the red soil vary according to its formation and climatic condition under which the soil was formed. Red soil is porous, friable and non-retentive of moisture. The colour of the soil is due to the presence of high content of iron oxides. This soil is poor in nitrogen, phosphorus, acids and humus. paddy, ragi, tobacco and vegetables are the chief crops grown in this soil. Almost all types of crops can be grown in this soil with the application of manure and irrigation facilities. It is dominantly found in Sivagangai and Ramanathapuram districts.

6.8.4 Laterite Soil

This soil is formed by the process of intense leaching. Laterite soils are found in some parts of Kancheepuram, Tiruvallur and Thanjavur districts and some patches over the mountainous region in the Nilgiris. Crops grown in this soil are paddy, ginger, pepper and plantains. It is also suitable for the cultivation of tea and coffee plants.

6.8.5 Saline Soil

Saline soils in Tamil Nadu are confined to the Coromandel coast. Vedaranyam has a pocket of saline soil. However, the tsunami waves on December 26, 2004 brought a lot of sand and deposited it all along the east coast of Tamil Nadu. The tsunami made the coastal areas unsuitable for cultivation to a considerable extent.

6.9 Soil Erosion

Soil is a non-renewable resource. It is very difficult to replace the soil once it gets degraded. Deforestation, overgrazing, urbanisation and heavy rain are responsible for soil erosion in Tamil Nadu. Soil erosion reduces the fertility of soils, which in turn reduces agricultural productivity. So, it is necessary to take intensive care to conserve the soil resources.



Desertification is one of the major problems of Tamil Nadu. According to the desertification atlas prepared by the ISRO, about 12% of the total geographical area is under desertification and land degradation. Theni, the Nilgiris and Kanyakumari are the worst affected districts. About 12,000 hectares (120 Sq.km) were affected by sand deposition in Theni and Rajapalayam.

6.10 Natural Vegetation

Natural vegetation refers to the forest cover. Landforms, nature of soil, temperature and rainfall are the major factors that control the distribution of natural vegetation. As per

National Forest Policy, 1988, a minimum of one-third of the total geographical area must be under forest cover. The total forest cover of Tamil Nadu is far lower than this. According to the Tamil Nadu State of Forest Report - 2017 assessment, the area under forest in the state is 26,281 sq.km, which constitutes 20.21% of the total area. Tamil Nadu constitutes 2.99% of India's forest cover. The forest types in the state varies from wet evergreen to scrub forests. The Western Ghats, the longest hill range in the state, is one of the 25 global hotspots of bio-diversity and one of the three mega centres of endemism in India. The following table shows the categories of forest and their areal extent classified under the provision of Indian Forest Act.

Forest Type	Area(sq.km)
Reserved Forest	19,459
Protected Forest	1,782
Unclassified Forest	1,266
Total	22,507

Source: Tamil Nadu statistical Handbook - 2016

Forest Types

The forest in the state is broadly divided into five types as follows

6.10.1 Tropical Evergreen Forest

This forest type is found in the regions that receive heavy rainfall. It is a dense, multi-layered forest. It is found in the upper slopes of Western Ghats of Tirunelveli, Kanyakumari, the Nilgiris and Coimbatore districts. The major tree species of this forest are cinnamon, Malabar ironwood, panasa, java plum/jamun, jack, kindal, ayani and crape myrtle. The semi-evergreen type of forest in the state is found over the regions of sub-tropical climate over the Eastern Ghats. The prominent regions are Servarayan, Kollimalai and Pachaimalai. Species of Indian mahogany, monkey teak, woolly cassia, jack and mango trees are common in this region.

6.10.2 Montane Temperate Forest

It is found in sheltered valleys of Anaimalai, Nilgiris and Palani hills over a 1000 metres altitude. They are known as 'Sholas'. The trees in this forest are evergreen and usually short. Nilgiri champa, wights litsea and rose apple are the common trees found in this forest.

6.10.3 Tropical Deciduous Forest

This type of forest lies in the margin of semi-evergreen and evergreen forests. The trees in this forest shed their leaves during the dry season. The trees reach up to a height of 30 metres. Some trees of this forest are silk cotton, kapok, kadamba, dog teak, woman's tounge, axlewood and siris. Bamboos are also common in this type of forests. Some trees of this forest are economically important.

6.10.4 Mangroves



Mangrove Forest in Pichavaram

This type of forest is found in the coastal areas, river deltas, tails of islands and over sea faces where accretion is in progress. The vegetation is typically evergreen, moderate in height and has leathery leaves. The vegetation of this forest is adapted to survive in tidal mud and salt water. Asiatic mangrove, white mangrove, wild jasmine/Indian pivot etc. are some of the notable trees of this forest. Pichavaram, Vedaranyam, Muthupet, Chatram and Thoothukudi are the places in Tamil Nadu where the mangrove forest is found to a considerable extent.

Role of Mangroves in Coastal Zone Management.

Mangroves helps in the prevention of coastal erosion from waves and storms. It also protects coral reefs and sea grass meadows from being smothered in sediments.

DO YOU KNOW? Pichavaram mangrove forest is located near Chidambaram, Cuddalore district. This is the second largest mangrove forest in the world covering about 1,100 hectares (11 sq.km) of area. It is separated from the Bay of Bengal by a sandbar. It consists of species like Avicennia and Rhizophora. It also supports the existence of rare varieties of shell and fin fishes.

6.10.5 Tropical Thorn Forest

Thorn forest in Tamil Nadu is found where there is a little rainfall. These forests are found from plains up to 400 meters altitude. The common trees of this forest are rusty acacia, wheel, neem and palm. Shrubs are common vegetation in this type of forest. This type of forest is found in the districts of Dharmapuri, Ramanathapuram, Virudhunagar and some parts of interior districts.

Districts with prominent forest cover in Tamil Nadu

District	Area (sq km)
Dharmapuri	3,280
Coimbatore	2,627
Erode	2,427
Vellore	1,857
The Nilgiris	1,583
Dindigul	1,662

6.11 Wild life

Animals and birds live in forests constitute the wild life. Tamil Nadu has a variety of wild animals, birds and reptiles. hills are an ideal refuge for elephants, bisons, tigers, deer and monkeys.

Several Wildlife sanctuaries and National Parks have been set up to protect the animal life in the state. The hills of the state provide an ideal condition for a variety of animals and plants life. The list of Wild life Sanctuaries, National parks and Biosphere Reserves of Tamil Nadu are listed in the following tables.

S.No	Wildlife Sanctuaries in Tamil Nadu	District	Year of Establishment
1	Mudumalai Wildlife Sanctuary	The Nilgiris	1940
2	Mundanthurai Wildlife Sanctuary	Tirunelveli	1962
3	Point Calimere Wildlife Sanctuary	Nagapattinam	1967
4	Indira Gandhi Wildlife Sanctuary	Coimbatore	1976
5	Kalakad Wildlife Sanctuary	Tirunelveli	1976
6	Vallanadu Black Buck Sanctuary	Thoothukudi	1987
7	Grizzled Giant Squirrel Wildlife Sanctuary	Virudhunagar	1988
8	Kanyakumari Wildlife Sanctuary	Kanyakumari	2007
9	Sathyamangalam Wildlife Sanctuary	Erode	2008
10	Megamalai Wildlife Sanctuary	Theni and Madurai	2009
11	Point Calimere Wildlife Sanctuary - Block A and Block B	Thanjavur and Tiruvarur	2013
12	Kodaikanal Wildlife Sanctuary	Dindigul and Theni	2013
13	Gangaikondan Spotted Deer Sanctuary	Tirunelveli	2013
14	Cauvery North Wildlife Sanctuary	Dharmapuri and Krishnagiri	2014
17	Nellai Wildlife Sanctuary	Tirunelveli	2015



S.No	Bird Sanctuaries in Tamil Nadu	District	Year of Establishment
1	Vettangudi Birds Sanctuary	Sivaganga	1977
2	Pulicat Lake Birds Sanctuary	Tiruvallur	1980
3	Karikili Birds Sanctuary	Kancheepuram	1989
4	Kanjirankulam Birds Sanctuary	Ramanathapuram	1989
5	Chitrangudi Birds Sanctuary	Ramanathapuram	1989
6	Koonthankulam-Kadankulam Birds Sanctuary	Tirunelveli	1994
7	Vellode Birds Sanctuary	Erode	1997
8	Vedanthangal Birds Sanctuary	Kancheepuram	1998
9	Udayamarthandapuram Birds Sanctuary	Tiruvarur	1998
10	Melaselvanur-Keelselvanur Birds Sanctuary	Ramanathapuram	1998
11	Vaduvoor Birds Sanctuary	Tiruvarur	1999
12	Karaivetti Birds Sanctuary	Ariyalur	2000
13	Theerthangal Bird Sanctury	Ramanathapuram	2010
14	Sakkarakottai Tank Birds Sanctuary	Ramanathapuram	2012
17	Oussudu Lake Birds Sanctuary	Villupuram	2015

S. No	Biosphere Reserves in Tamil Nadu
1	Nilgiri Biosphere Reserve
2	Gulf of Mannar Biosphere Reserve
3	Agasthiyarmalai Biosphere Reserve

Tamil Nadu is a state with varied climate, landforms and resources. This makes our state a distinct one among the Indian states. In Tamil Nadu, If the available resources are utilised rationally, it may continue to be at top in the country. So, it is the duty of the every individual to strive towards achieving this goal.

6.12 Natural Disasters in Tamil Nadu

A sudden natural catastrophe that causes great damage or loss to lives and properties is called as disaster. The alteration of natural environment by the technology and developmental activities increase the frequency of disasters all over the world. So, it is necessary to aware the measures to be adopted during different types of natural disasters to reduce the risk caused by them.

According to United Nations office for Disaster Risk Reduction, Disaster Risk Reduction(UNDRR) is the concept and practice of reducing disaster risks through systematic efforts to analyse and reduce the causal factors of disasters. This includes reducing exposure to hazards, lessening the vulnerability of people and property, wise management of land and environment, and improving preparedness and early warning for adverse events.

Here we will discuss about the natural disasters in Tamil Nadu and the measures to be adopted before, during and after different disasters.

6.12.1 Landslide

A collapse of a mass of earth or rock from a mountain or cliff is called landslide. Water is the most common trigger of a **landslide**. Nilgiris in Tamil Nadu is identified as one of the most vulnerable districts in the country and landslides pose a major threat in this area. The other regions which are prone to land slides are Coimbatore and palani hill of Dindigul district where Kodaikanal hill station is located.

Risk Reduction Measures

Before: Create awareness; stay alert and awake; monitor the news updates; make evacuation plan; listen for any unusual sounds that might indicate moving debris such as trees cracking, boulders knocking and consider leaving the place of landslide if it is safe to do so.

During

If indoors: Find cover in the section of the building that is farthest away from the approaching landslide; take shelter under a strong table or bench. Hold on firmly and stay until all movement has ceased.



Landslide

If outdoors

Move quickly away from its likely path, keeping clear of embankments, trees, power lines and poles; avoid crossing roads and bridges and stay away from the landslide because the slope may experience additional failures for hours to days afterwards.

After- Stay away from the slide area; listen to local radio or television stations for the latest emergency information; watch for flooding, which may occur after a landslide or debris flow; check for injured and trapped persons near the slide, without entering the direct slide area.

6.12.2 Flood

Flood is a common one in the coastal districts of Tamil Nadu during northeast monsoon. The recent flood occurred in the state was in 2015. The **2015 South Indian**

floods resulted from heavy rainfall generated by the annual northeast monsoon in November–December 2015. They affected the Coromandel Coast region of the South Indian states of Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh. More than 500 people were killed and over 1.8 million people were displaced. With the estimates of damages and losses ranging from nearly ₹200 billion, the floods were the costliest natural disasters of the year 2015. Tamil Nadu was the worst affected state by this flood. Generally the districts of Kancheepuram, Tiruvallur, Cuddalore, Villupuram, Thanjavur, Tiruvarur, Nagapattinam, Pudukkottai, Ramanathapuram, Tirunelveli and Kanyakumari are the most flood prone districts of the state.



Flood

Risk Reduction Measures

Before: Know about relief centres and evacuation routes; keep emergency phone numbers and important information; fold and roll up things on to higher ground.

During: Be quick, keep safe and ensure that children and elderly are safe by leaving the house to a higher ground; turn off all electrical appliances and gas; leave the area before it gets too late; do not drive through the water; stay away from power lines or broken power transmission cables and try to keep away from flood water.

After: Make sure to get back inside your house, keep all power and electrical appliances off before it is okay to put them on and wear appropriate dress before cleaning house which is necessary to clean the contamination.

6.12.3 Cyclone

The coastal regions of Tamil Nadu are often hit by the tropical cyclones formed in Bay of Bengal during northeast monsoon. Occurrence of flood, losses to lives and properties are the recurring one in the state. Based on the cyclone hit areas, the state of Tamil Nadu can be divided into five zones namely very high, high, medium, low and very low cyclone prone zones. Southern part of Chennai, eastern part of kancheepuram, eastern part of Villupuram, northeastern part of Cuddalore and Union Territory of Puducherry fall under the very high cyclone prone zone. Nagapattinam, Tiruvallur, Tiruvarur (except northwestern part), southern part of Thanjavur, eastern part of Pudukkottai, eastern part of Cuddalore, middle portion of Villupuram, eastern part of Tiruvannamalai, western part of kancheepuram, northeastern part of Vellore and northern part of Chennai districts are included in the high cyclone prone zone.



Cyclone

Risk Reduction Measures

Before: Ignore rumours, stay calm, don't be panic; Keep your mobile phones charged to ensure connectivity; use sms; listen to radio; watch TV; read newspapers for weather updates. Keep your documents and valuables in water proof containers; prepare an emergency kits with essential items for survival; secure your house; carry out repairs; don't leave sharp objects loose; untie cattle/animals for their safety. Fishermen should keep a radio set with extra batteries handy; keep boats and rafts tied up safely and don't venture out in the sea.

During: Take care of the old and young, keep all family members inside the house; switch off all electrical appliances, stay in an empty room, movable items should be kept securely tied; try to help your neighbours but, don't go out during cyclone.

After: Those who shifted to the cyclone centre must remain there till instructions are received; strictly avoid loose electrical wires after the cyclone; beware of snakes and other animals immediately after the cyclone; clear debris and carcasses from/near the premise after the cyclone and report losses truthfully and accurately to the authorities.

6.12.4 Drought

Tamil Nadu is water deficit state. It is almost a regular one and not a seasonal one. It depends mostly on northeast monsoon for its rain. Its failure ends in disastrous. The total assessed water resources in the state amount to 1,587 TMC (Thousand million cubic feet) while the state government's demand estimate is 1,894 TMC. Demand exceeds supply by 19.3%, this happens when rainfall is "normal".

The government classifies groundwater blocks into different categories. Only 145 of 385 such blocks are classified safe. The others are in various stages of depletion: over-exploited, critical and semi-critical. About 2% of the blocks are already saline. About 64% of the total area of the state is drought prone. Coimbatore, Dharmapuri, Kanyakumari, Madurai, Ramanathapuram, Salem, Tirunelveli, and Tiruchirappalli are the districts which are more drought prone.



Drought



According to the desertification atlas prepared by the ISRO, about 12 percent of the total geographical area is under desertification and land degradation. Theni, Virudhunagar, the Niligris and Kanyakumari are the worst affected districts. To manage the water deficit, rain water harvesting and water conservation methods have to be implemented strictly.

Some methods of water conservation are:

Protection of water from pollution; redistribution of water; rational use of groundwater; population control; renovation of traditional water sources; use of modern irrigation methods; increasing forest cover; changing crop pattern; flood management and use of geothermal water are some of the major water conservation methods.

6.12.5 Forest Fire

Tamil Nadu is a tropical state. The high temperature during summer leads to occasional forest fire in deciduous and thorn forests. The recent fire accident in the state took place in 2018. The tragedy happened on March 11 when 37 people from Chennai and Erode regions were returning after a trekking trip to the Kurangani hills in Theni district. The groups were struck in the middle of a forest fire, which ultimately killed 23 people. In the aftermath of the Kurangani forest fire, Tamil Nadu government has banned trekking in the state for two months every year (February 15 to April 15).



Forest Fire

Risk Reduction Measures

Before: Create defensible space to separate your home from flammable vegetation and materials (30 feet); follow all local fire and building codes; keep all trees and shrubs trimmed. Use approved fire resistant materials; make evacuation plans with family members which include several options with an outside meeting place.

During: Listen to radio; watch tv; read newspapers for updates; if adequate water are available fill buckets with water. turn a light on a room in case of smoke; turn off gas and electrical appliances and be ready to evacuate all family members.

After: Check with fire officials before attempting to return to your home; use caution when re-entering a burned area - flare ups can occur; check grounds for hot spots and check the roof and exterior areas for sparks and embers.

6.12.6 Tsunami

Though Tsunami is not a common one in India, its incident in 2004 alerted India and the state of Tamil Nadu on this aspect. Almost all the countries situated around the Bay of Bengal were affected by the tsunami waves in the morning hours of 26 December 2004 (between 09:00 and 10:30 hrs IST). The killer waves were triggered by an earthquake measuring 8.9 on the Richter scale that had an epicentre near the west coast of Sumatra in Indonesia. Waves rose up to 6-10 metres and the impact was felt up to the East African coast affecting Somalia, Tanzania and Kenya.



Tsunami





Tremors and Tidal Waves in South India

Tremors and Tidal waves hit South India and Large Scale devastation was reported. Over a thousand people have been killed in tidal waves in Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, and Andaman and Nicobar Islands. Tamil Nadu was the "worst affected" state of India in this incident.

More than 1,500 people have been killed in the state. Casualties reported were very high in Nagapattinam (700), Kanyakumari (250) and Cuddalore (200) districts. Around 125 deaths have been recorded in the state capital of Chennai. Earlier, the tsunami was reported in India in 1881 and 1941.

Risk Reduction Measures

Before: if you live in a coastal area, know about tsunami risk and local warning arrangements; develop household emergency plan; know where the nearest high ground is and how you will reach it.

During: Take your get away kit, don't travel areas at risk; move immediately nearest high ground; if you can't escape tsunami, go to an upper storey of the building or climb onto a roof or tree or grab a floating objects; never go to the shore to watch tsunami and listen to local radio stations as emergency management.

After: Continue to listen to the radio; don't return to the evacuation zone until authorities have given all clear; check yourself for injuries and get first aid and help others.

6.12.7 Earthquakes

India is a vast country which experiences many earthquakes at different

periods. Generally high risk zones of the country are located in the north and central parts. The state of Tamil Nadu is located in the moderately low risk zone.

Earthquakes in Tamil Nadu

26 September 2001: A moderate quake occurred in the Bay of Bengal, off the coast of the Union Territory of Puducherry, resulting in three deaths and minor damage to property in Puducherry and coastal Tamil Nadu. It had a magnitude of 5.6 on Richter scale.

7 June 2008: A mild earthquake occurred in the Palar Valley region in Tamil Nadu. It had a magnitude of 3.8 on Richter scale and was felt in many parts of Vellore district.

12 August 2011: A mild earthquake occurred in the Cauvery basin in Ariyalur district. It had a magnitude of 3.5 on Richter scale and was felt in several districts in southern Tamil Nadu. It resulted in one death and caused minor damages in the districts of Cuddalore, Villupuram, Perambalur and Tiruchirappalli.

In 2012, Chennai experienced a mild tremor with its epicentre in the Indian Ocean.

Risk Reduction Measures

During: Take cover under a strong table or any other piece of furniture and remain under cover until the shaking stops.

After: Proceed cautiously once the earthquake has stopped and always avoid roads, bridges that might have been damaged by the earthquake.

SUMMARY

- Physical geography is the branch of geography dealing with the different physical aspects such as landforms, drainage, climate, soil, natural vegetation etc.
- Tamil Nadu is broadly classified into three physical divisions namely mountains (Western and Eastern Ghats), plateaus (Bharamahal, Coimbatore and Madurai) and plains (inland and coastal).
- Cauvery, Palar, Ponnaiyar, Vaigai and Thamirabarani are the major rivers of Tamil Nadu.
- The climate of Tamil Nadu is tropical maritime. Winter, summer, southwest and northeast monsoons are the seasons of Tamil Nadu.



- Soils of Tamil Nadu are classified into five types according to their characteristics. They are alluvial, black, red, laterite and saline.
- The forest cover of Tamil Nadu is 20.21% of its geographical area. Evergreen, deciduous, mangrove, thorny and montane temperate are its major forest types.
- Disaster Risk Reduction is reducing risks through systematic efforts.
- Natural disasters are earthquakes, volcanoes, landslides, cyclones, droughts and forest fires.



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

1. The latitudinal extent of Tamil Nadu is
 - a) $8^{\circ}5'N$ to $13^{\circ}35'N$
 - b) $8^{\circ}5'S$ to $13^{\circ}35'S$
 - c) $8^{\circ}0'N$ to $13^{\circ}5'N$
 - d) $8^{\circ}0'S$ to $13^{\circ}05'S$
2. The longitudinal extent of Tamil Nadu is
 - a) $76^{\circ}18' E$ to $80^{\circ}20'E$
 - b) $76^{\circ}18' W$ to $80^{\circ}20'W$
 - c) $86^{\circ}18' E$ to $10^{\circ}20'E$
 - d) $86^{\circ}18' W$ to $10^{\circ}20'W$
3. The highest peak in Tamil Nadu is
 - a) Anaimudi
 - b) Doddabetta
 - c) Mahendragiri
 - d) Servarayan
4. Which of the following passes is not located in the Western Ghats of Tamil Nadu?
 - a) Palghat
 - b) Shencottah
 - c) Bhorghat
 - d) Achankoil
5. Which one of the following rivers is flow into the Arabian Sea?
 - a) Periyar
 - b) Cauvery
 - c) Chittar
 - d) Bhavani
6. The district with largest mangrove forest cover in Tamil Nadu is
 - a) Ramanathapuram
 - b) Nagapattinam
 - c) Cuddalore
 - d) Theni
7. The forest cover of Tamil Nadu as per 2017 Indian Forest Report is
 - a) 20.21%
 - b) 20.31%
 - c) 21.20%
 - d) 21.30%

8. Retreating monsoon wind picks up moisture from
 - a) Arabian sea
 - b) Bay of Bengal
 - c) Indian Ocean
 - d) Timor sea
9. Which of the following district is affected by sand dunes to a large extent?
 - a) Theni
 - b) Madurai
 - c) Thanjavur
 - d) Ramanathapuram
10. The district which has the largest forest cover in Tamil Nadu is
 - a) Dharmapuri
 - b) Vellore
 - c) Dindigul
 - d) Erode

II. Fill in the blanks

1. The plateau which lies between the Nilgiris and Dharmapuri districts is _____.
2. _____ is the highest peak in the southern most part of the Eastern Ghats.
3. The riverine Island of Srirangam is located between _____ and _____ branches of cauvery.
4. _____ soil is suitable for the cultivation of tea and coffee plants.
5. _____ is the Tamil Nadu state animal which is found in _____

III. Match the following

1. Winter season - Pre-monsoon
2. Summer season - June to September
3. Southwest monsoon - March to May
4. North east monsoon - January and February
5. Mango Shower - October to December



IV. Assertion type Question

- Assertion (A):** Tamil Nadu does not receive much rainfall from southwest monsoon.
Reason (R): It is situated in the rain shadow area of the Western Ghats.
a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) explains (A).
b) Both (A) and (R) are true but, (R) does not explain (A).
c) (A) is true but, (R) is false.
d) (R) is true but, (A) is false.
- Assertion (A):** Red soil is rich in iron oxides.
Reason (R): It is formed by leaching
a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) explains (A).
b) Both (A) and (R) are true but, (R) does not explain (A).
c) (A) is true but, (R) is false.
d) (R) is true but, (A) is false.

V. Answer the following in brief

- State the boundaries of Tamil Nadu.
- List out the districts of Tamil Nadu which are partly/fully located on Eastern and Western Ghats separately.
- What is 'Teri'?
- How is coastal plain formed?
- Name the major islands of Tamil Nadu.
- Name the tributaries of river Thamirabarani.
- Define : Disaster Risk Reduction.
- During cyclone, how does the Meteorological department warn the fishermen?

VI. Distinguish between the following

- Western Ghats and Eastern Ghats.
- Southwest monsoon and Northeast monsoon.
- Tropical evergreen and Tropical deciduous forests.

VII. Give reasons for the following

- Eastern Ghats are not a continuous range.
- Tamil Nadu receives low rainfall during southwest monsoon.
- Alluvial soil is fertile.
- Cuddalore is a multiprone disaster zone.

VIII. Answer the following in a paragraph

- Describe the nature of the plateau region of Tamil Nadu.
- Write an account on river Cauvery.
- Explain the characteristic features of summer and winter seasons of Tamil Nadu.
- What is desertification and write about the areas affected by it in Tamil Nadu.
- Bring out the types and distribution of soils in Tamil Nadu.
- Name the areas which are affected by landslides. What will you do before, during and after landslides?

IX. Map study

Mark important rivers, distribution of soil and forest types on different Tamil Nadu maps.

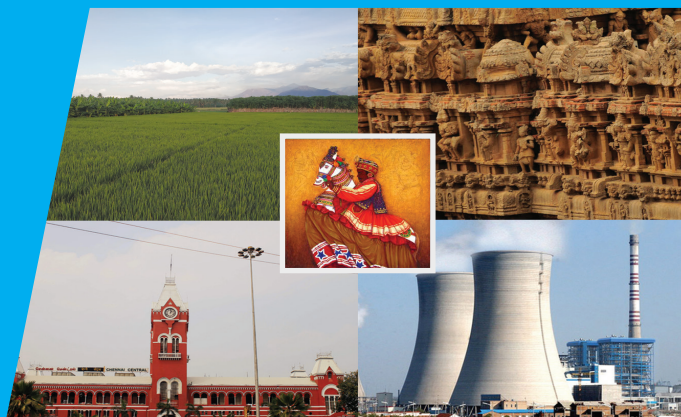


REFERENCE BOOKS

- Geography of Tamil Nadu* by Kumarasamy (2018), Varthamana Publication, T. Nagar, Chennai
- Manoramma Year book 2018*

Unit - 7

Human Geography of Tamil Nadu



Learning Objectives

- To understand the agricultural factors, major crops and their distribution in Tamil Nadu
- To learn about the water resources of Tamil Nadu
- To study the mineral and industrial resources of Tamil Nadu
- To analyze the population and its composition in Tamil Nadu
- To learn about the man made disasters in Tamil Nadu



Introduction

Human geography refers to the study of ways of development of human societies and their operation in relation to their physical environment. This chapter focuses on the distribution, characteristics and utilisation of different resources in Tamil Nadu. We have studied earlier that the earth is endowed with a variety of natural resources such as landforms, rivers, soil, natural vegetation, water and wildlife. These resources are useful only when they are utilised. Human beings use these resources using their intelligence and skill. Thus, the human beings are the most significant resource on the earth surface. They turn all these natural resources into useful products with their skills and abilities.

7.1 Agriculture

The word "**agriculture**" is derived from the Latin words "**ager and cultura**", which means field and growing. Agriculture is a practice of farming that includes the cultivation of crops, rearing of animals, birds, forestry, fisheries and other related activities. Agriculture is the

major occupation in Tamil Nadu. Agriculture has been the mainstay of the state's economy since independence with more than 65% of the population depends upon this sector for their living. Agriculture provides employment for rural people on a large scale. There is a strong link between agriculture and economic growth. Agriculture constitutes about 21% of the state's economy. However, it fluctuates from one year to another. Paddy, millets and pulses are the principal food crops of the state. Sugarcane, cotton, sunflower, coconut, cashew, chillies, gingelly, groundnut, tea, coffee, cardamom and rubber are the major commercial crops.

7.2 Geographical determinants of Agriculture

Landform, climate, soil and irrigation are the factors that determine the growth of agriculture.

7.2.1 Landform

Tamil Nadu is a land of diverse landscape comprising of hills, plateaus and plains. Among them the plains are most suitable

for agriculture. The plains with alluvial soil enhances agricultural productivity. Example: Plains of cauvery. Agriculture in the plateau is moderate and is poor on the hills.

7.2.2 Climate

Tamil Nadu is situated in the tropical zone, which is nearer to the equator. The state experiences a tropical climate. Hence, the temperature in Tamil Nadu is relatively high almost throughout the year. So, only the tropical crops are cultivated. Water is another limiting factor of agriculture. Northeast monsoon is the major source of rainfall for Tamil Nadu. Therefore, the major cropping season begins with this season. The rainfall in this season and the irrigation facilities affect agriculture to a large extent.

7.2.3 Soil


Soil is one of the most essential elements of agriculture. It provides essential minerals or nutrients for the growth of crops and vegetation. The regions of river valleys and the coastal plains are the most agriculturally productive regions of the state as they are covered with fertile alluvial soil.

Types and regions of Agriculture Practices in Tamil Nadu

Farming type	Area practiced
Subsistence intensive agriculture }	Practiced all over Tamil Nadu with few exceptions.
Plantation Agriculture }	
Mixed farming	Banks of River Cauvery and Thenpennai.

7.2.4 Irrigation

Monsoon rainfall in the state is highly irregular. Further it is seasonal. Hence, irrigation becomes necessary for successful cultivation of crops in the state. In the dry regions, rain-fed crops are cultivated.



The Tamil Nadu Rice Research Institute (TRRI) is an Indian research institute working in the field of rice under Tamil Nadu Agricultural University (TNAU). It is situated at Aduthurai, in Thanjavur district, it was established in April, 1985 in TNAU to meet the research requirements of the region with the help of existing Agricultural Colleges and Research centres and perform lead function for rice and rice based cropping system research.

7.3 Cropping Seasons in Tamil Nadu

Farmers select different crops for different seasons of cultivation. It is based on the temperature and availability of moisture in the soil. Accordingly, the state has the following cropping seasons.

Name	Sowing	Harvesting	Major crops
Sornavari (chittirai pattam)	April-May	August-September	Millets and cotton
Samba (Adipattam)	July-August	January-February	Paddy and sugarcane
Navarai	November - December	February-March	Fruits, vegetables, cucumber and watermelon

7.4 Distribution of major crops in Tamil Nadu

7.4.1 Paddy

Paddy is the most important staple food crop of Tamil Nadu. Ponni and kichadi samba are the major varieties of paddy grown in Tamil Nadu. About 3 million hectares of the state is under rice cultivation. Though it is cultivated all over Tamil Nadu, its cultivation is highly concentrated in Thanjavur, Tiruvarur, Tiruvallur, Kancheepuram, Villupuram, Cuddalore and Tirunelveli districts. It ranks third in the production of rice among the states of India. The deltaic region of river cauvery

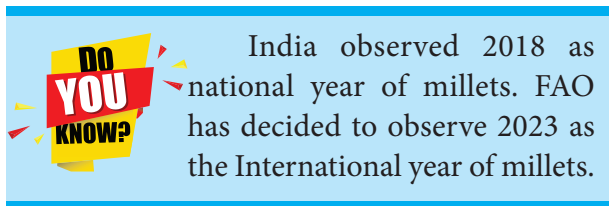
(the undivided Thanjavur district) is the major rice-producing region of Tamil Nadu. So, this region is rightly called as the "**Granary of Tamil Nadu.**"



Paddy Cultivation

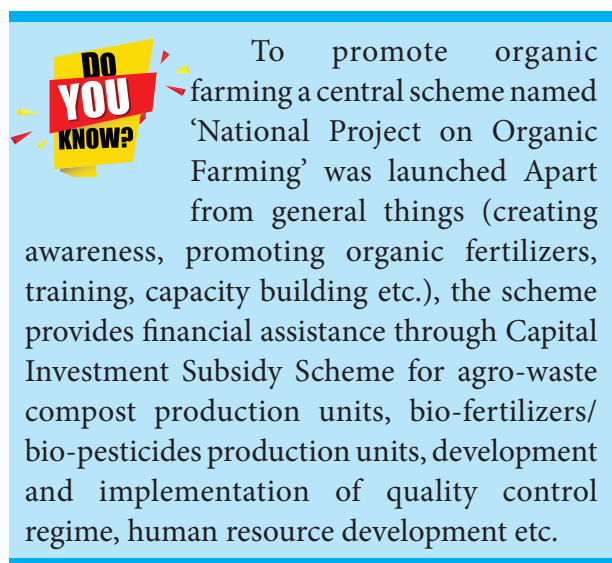
7.4.2 Millets

Millets form staple food of nearly one-third of human population of Tamil Nadu. Sorghum/jowar (cholan), ragi (kezhvaragu) and bajra (kambu) are the major millets. These are grown not only in drier areas but also in the coastal plains. Sorghum is grown in the Coimbatore plateau and Kambam valley. Ragi is grown in Coimbatore, Dharmapuri, Vellore and Cuddalore districts. Bajra is mostly cultivated in Ramanathapuram, Tirunelveli, Karur, Perambalur and Salem districts.



7.4.3 Pulses

Pulses are the major source of protein. Bengal gram, black gram, green gram, cowpea and horse gram are the important pulses grown in Tamil Nadu. Pulses are grown in a wide range of climatic conditions mostly in drier regions with or without irrigation. Mild cool climate and a low to moderate rainfall are best suited for these crops. Pulses serve as excellent fodder. Pulses are grown in almost all districts in the state except Chennai, Nilgiris and Kanyakumari. Coimbatore leads in the production of Bengal



gram. Vellore and Kanyakumari districts produce red gram.

Tiruvarur, Nagapattinam and Thoothukudi districts are the principal producers of green gram and black gram. Horse gram is widely cultivated in Dharmapuri and Krishnagiri districts.

7.4.4 Oil Seeds

Groundnut, gingelly castor, coconut, sunflower and mustard are some of the oilseeds that are grown in Tamil Nadu. Apart from its use in food preparation, it is used in industries as a lubricant, in the manufacture of varnish, soaps, candles, cosmetics and pharmaceuticals. Groundnut is the major oilseed of the state. The cultivation of groundnut is mostly concentrated in Vellore, Tiruvannamalai, Villupuram, Salem and Pudukottai districts. It is also grown to some extent in Dharmapuri, Cuddalore, Perambalur and Madurai. Erode, Ramanathapuram, Sivagangai and Virudhunagar districts are its minor producers. Coconut is grown in Coimbatore, Thanjavur and Kanyakumari districts.

7.4.5 Sugarcane

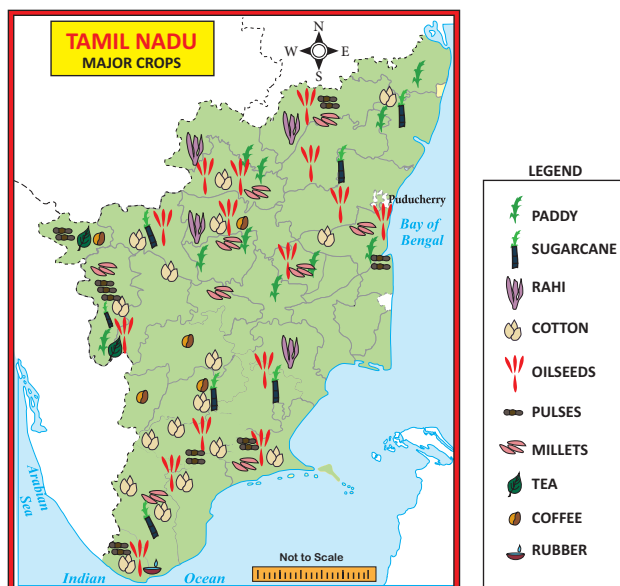
It is one of the major cash crops of the state. It is an annual crop. It requires high temperature and heavy rainfall. It grows well in the tropical region. Major sugarcane-producing districts are Tiruvallur, Kancheepuram, Vellore, Cuddalore, Tiruchirapalli, Coimbatore, Erode and Tirunelveli.

7.4.6 Cotton

Cotton is a fibre and cash crop. It requires black soil, long frost-free condition and warm and humid weather for its cultivation. Humid weather in the early stages and hot, dry weather during harvest period is suitable for this crop. It is predominantly cultivated in Coimbatore plateau and Vaigai-Vaippar river basins. It is also cultivated in Madurai, Ramanathapuram, Virudhunagar, Tirunelveli, Thoothukudi, Salem and Dharmapuri districts.

7.4.7 Plantation crops

Tea, coffee, cashew, rubber and cinchona are the major plantation crops of the state. Tamil Nadu ranks second in area and production of tea in India next to Assam. Tea plantations are found in the hills of the Nilgiris and Coimbatore. The Nilgiris is the notable regions for tea plantations. Coffee plants are grown in the hills of Western Ghats as well as Eastern Ghats. It is also found in the hilly slopes of Dindigul, Madurai, Theni and Salem districts. Yercaud, Kolli Hills and Kodaikanal are notable for coffee plantations. Tamil Nadu stands second in area and production of coffee next to Karnataka. Rubber plantations are significant in Kanyakumari. Pepper is confined to the warm and wet slopes of Eastern and Western Ghats of Tamil Nadu. Cashew is extensively cultivated in Cuddalore district.



Cinchona is planted at heights varying from 1060 to 1280 metres in Anaimalai hills. Cardamom estates are located at few places in the hills of Madurai region at an elevation of 915 to 1525 metres.



TANTEA (TANTEA-Tamil Nadu Tea Plantation Corporation Limited) is one of the Biggest Black Tea Producers in India with high quality clonal tea. Its plantation spreads over nearly 4500 hec.

Tamil Nadu Dairy Development Corporation Ltd. was transformed into the newly registered Tamil Nadu Co-operative Milk Producers Federation Limited Popularly known as “**Aavin**”.

7.5 Livestock/Animal Husbandry

Livestock has remained an integral part of socio-economic fabric of rural people. The number of cattle found in Tamil Nadu is 88,92,473. There are 47,86,680 sheep, 81,43,341 goats and 11,73,48,894 poultry animals.

7.5.1 Goat

Goat is also known as ‘**poor man’s cow**’ in India. It forms a very important component in dry land farming system. In the marginal or undulating lands unsuitable for rearing of other types of cattle like cow or buffalo, goat is the best alternative. With very low investments, goat rearing can be made into a profitable venture for small and marginal farmers.

7.5.2 Sheep

Sheep is used for multiple purposes like wool, meat, milk, skins and manure, and forms an important component of the rural economy, particularly in the arid, semi-arid and mountainous areas of Tamil Nadu. It provides a dependable source of income to the shepherds through the sale of wool and animals.



A variety of cattle breeds are reared in the state for the milk and forms a major component of the rural economy. The poultry hub of Tamil Nadu are Namakkal, Salem, Erode and Coimbatore districts.

7.5.3 Fishing

Since Tamil Nadu is a coastal state, fishing is one of the major occupations in the state. With widespread reservoirs and rivers, inland fishing also is also seen to a considerable extent. There are about 2500 species of fishes found in different aquatic environments.

7.5.4 Marine Fishing

The length of the coastline of Tamil Nadu is 1076 km (13% of the country's coastline). The coastal region of the state covers an area of 0.19 million sq.km. An area of 41,412 sq.km of continental shelves of the state favours coastal fishing and Tamil Nadu is one of the leading states in marine fish production. Marine fishing is also called inshore fish or neritic fishing, carried out in oceans and seas. Large mechanised boats are used for fishing. In ocean or seawaters, fishing within few kilometres from the shoreline is called inshore fishing and the fishing far from the shore typically 20–30 miles out in water hundreds and thousands of feet deep is called off-shore fishing. The fish varieties caught are sharks, flying fish, crouch, catfish, silver bellies, and crabs. Chennai, Kanyakumari, Tirunelveli, Nagapattinam, Thanjavur and Ramanathapuram districts contribute about 40% to marine fish production in the state. Their coastal location favours fishing in these regions. The state has three major fishing harbours, three medium fishing harbours and 363 fish landing centres. The export of marine products from the state during 2007–08 accounted for 72,644 metric tons.

7.5.5 Inland Fishing

Inland fishing is carried out in lakes, rivers, ponds, estuaries, backwaters and

Second Green Revolution (Eco-Farming or Organic Farming)

In organic farming synthetic fertilizers, pesticides, growth regulator and livestock feed additives are not used. This type of farming rely on crop rotation, crop residues, animal manure, off-farm organic wastes and biological pest control to maintain soil productivity. This farming method is being adopted by very few farmers in the state. It has to be increased in number.

swamps. Oysters and prawns are cultured in original nurseries. Catamaran, diesel boats and floating nets are used in fishing. Tamil Nadu Fisheries Department has introduced several programmes for the betterment of fishing. The major programmes are aquaculture in farm ponds and irrigation tanks, fish seed bank, fish seed rearing, ornamental fish culture and the establishment of Fish Farmer Development Agency. Vellore district leads in the production of inland fish production with 10% of state's production. Cuddalore, Sivagangai and Virudhunagar districts stand second with 9% of inland fish catch each. Fishing sector contributes 1.25% of state's economy.

7.6 Water Resource

Water is the precious gift of nature to humankind and millions of other species living on the earth.



Tamil Nadu constitutes 4% of India's land area and is inhabited by 6% of India's population, but has only 2.5% percent of India's water resources. More than 95% of the surface water and 80% of the ground water have already been put into use. Major uses of water include human/animal consumption, irrigation and industrial use. The state is heavily dependent on monsoon rains. The annual average rainfall is around



930 mm (47% during the northeast monsoon, 35% during the southwest monsoon, 14% in summer and 4% in winter).

Surface Water Resources	Numbers
River Basin	17
Reservoirs	81
Tanks	41,127
Tube wells and other wells	4,98,644
Open wells	15,06,919
Total (Million Cubic metres)	2046788 MCM
<i>Source: Statistical handbook of Tamil Nadu - 2017</i>	

7.6.1 Multipurpose River Valley Projects

Multipurpose river valley projects are basically designed for the development of irrigation for agriculture and hydropower generation. However, they are used for many other purposes as well.

7.6.2 Mettur Dam

The Mettur Dam was constructed in a gorge, where river Cauvery enters the plains. It is one of the oldest dam in India. It provides irrigation to Salem, Erode, Karur, Tiruchirappalli, Thanjavur, Tiruvarur and Nagapattinam districts for about 2,71,000 acres of farmland. The dam, park, major hydroelectric power stations and hills on all sides make this dam an important tourist spot.



Mettur Dam

7.6.3 Bhavani Sagar Dam

The Bhavani Sagar Dam is located 80 km away from Coimbatore city in the district of Erode. It has been constructed across the river Bhavani. This dam is one of the biggest earthen dams in the country.

7.6.4 Amaravathi Dam

The Amaravathi dam is situated 25 km away from Udumalpet in Tirupur district. The dam has been constructed across the river Amaravathi, a tributary of Cauvery. The dam was built primarily for irrigation and flood control. A small hydropower station has also been installed recently. This reservoir is notable for the significant population of mugger crocodiles. It is also a familiar tourist spot.

7.6.5 Krishnagiri Dam

Krishnagiri dam is situated at a distance of 7 km from Krishnagiri towards Dharmapuri. This dam drains an area of 5428 sq.km. This is a famous tourist spot too. This dam is flooded with tourists during the weekends.

7.6.6 Sathanur Dam

Sathanur Dam was constructed across the river Thenpennai in Chengam taluk. It is in the midst of Chennakesava hills. The water-holding capacity of the dam is 7321 million cubic feet (full level: 119 feet). About 7183 hectares of land is drained by the left bank canal and 905 hectares by the right bank canal of this dam. It irrigates the land in Thandampet and Tiruvannamalai blocks. There is also a large crocodile farm and a fish grotto. Parks are maintained inside the dam for tourists and the gardens are used by the film industry.

7.6.7 Mullaiperiyar Dam

Mullaiperiyar dam was built by the British administration in 1895. It has been constructed on the Periyar river, which originates from Thekkady hills of Kerala. The dam was built mainly for watering the farming



land of Tamil Nadu, which is perennially drought-prone. Though the dam is located in the state of Kerala, most of its water is used to irrigate Tamil Nadu. The dam is 175 feet in height and 1200 feet in length.

7.6.8 Vaigai Dam

This dam built across the river Vaigai near Andipatti. The dam with a height of 111 feet can store water up to 71 feet. It is located 7 km from Andipatti and 70 km from Madurai. This dam was opened on 21 January, 1959. The dam has a unique garden that deserves the surname 'Little Brindavan'. It is a popular picnic spot in Theni district.

7.6.9 Manimuthar Dam

Manimuthar dam is located about 47 km from Tirunelveli. The gorgeous garden of the dam is located about 5 km from the dam and is accessible through a zig-zag ghat road. Pleasure boating and waterfalls are additional tourist attractions near the dam.

7.6.10 The Papanasam Dam

It is also known as Karaiyar dam and is located about 49 km away from Tirunelveli. The dam is used to irrigate 34,861 hectares of land in Tirunelveli and Thoothukudi districts. It generates 28 MW of hydro power.

7.6.11 Parampikulam Aliyar Project

It is a joint venture of Tamil Nadu and Kerala states. It envisages the construction of seven interconnected reservoirs by harnessing the water of seven rivers, which include major rivers of Parambikulam and Aliyar.

Parappalar project is located near Ottanchatram. Its storage capacity is 167 million cubic feet of water. It is about 75 km from Madurai and is in Palani taluk.

7.6.12 Surface water Resources

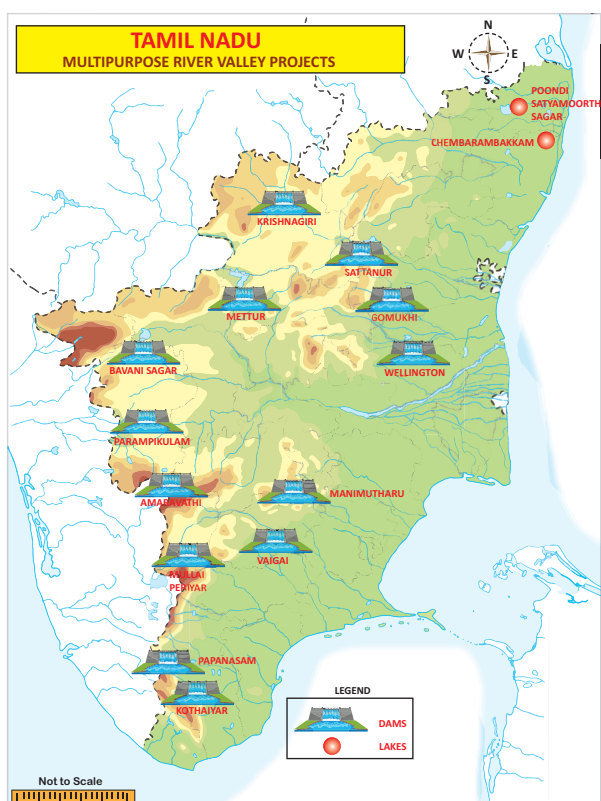
The total surface water potential of the state is about 24,864 mcm (million cubic metre). There are 17 major river basins in the state with 81 reservoirs and about 41,262 tanks. Most of the surface water has already been tapped, primarily for irrigation, where water use is largest. An area of 24 lakh hectares of the land are irrigated by surface water through major, medium and minor schemes.

7.6.13 Ground Water Resources

The utilizable groundwater resource of the state is 22,423 mcm. The current level of utilization of water is about 13,558 mcm which is about 60 percent of the available recharge, while about 8875 mcm (40 percent) is the balance available for use.

7.6.14 Water Resource Management

Water resource management is the activity of planning, developing, distributing and managing the optimum use of water resources. The demand for water in Tamil Nadu is increasing at a fast rate both due to increasing population and also due to larger per capita needs triggered by economic growth. The per capita availability of water resources is just 900 cubic metres when compared to the national average of 2,200 cubic metres. Agriculture is the largest consumer of water in the state using 75% of the state's water resources. Demands from other sectors such as domestic and industries have been growing significantly. The state is heavily dependent on monsoon rains. Since the state is entirely dependent on rains for recharging its water resources, monsoon failures lead to acute water scarcity and severe droughts. So, it is important to save water for us and the future generation.



7.7 Mineral Resources

Tamil Nadu is the leading holder of country's resources of vermiculite, magnetite, dunite, rutile, garnet, molybdenum and ilmenite. The state accounts for the country's 55.3% of lignite, 75% of vermiculite, 69% of dunite, 59% of garnet, 52% of molybdenum and 30% of titanium mineral resources.

Important minerals are found in the state are as follows: Neyveli has large lignite resources. Coal is also available in Ramanathapuram. Oil and gas are found in the Cauvery basin.

Iron deposits are found in Kanjamalai region in Salem district and Kalrayan Malai region of Tiruvannamalai district. Magnesite ores are available near Salem. Bauxite is found in Servarayan Hills, Kotagiri, Udagamandalam, Palani and Kollimalai areas. Gypsum is obtained in Tiruchirappalli, Tirunelveli, Thoothukudi and Virudhunagar districts. Ilmenite and rutile are found in the sands of Kanyakumari beach. Limestone is available in Coimbatore, Cuddalore, Dindigul, Kancheepuram, Karur, Madurai, Nagapattinam, Namakkal, Perambalur,

Ramanathapuram, Salem and Tiruvallur districts. Magnesite is obtained in Coimbatore, Dharmapuri, Karur, Namakkal, the Nilgiris, Salem, Tiruchirappalli, Tirunelveli and Vellore districts. Feldspar, quartz, copper and lead are also found in some parts of the state.

7.8 Industries

Industries use raw materials and convert them into usable product or goods. Textiles, sugar, paper, leather, cement, electrical equipment, automobiles, information technology and tourism are the major industries of Tamil Nadu.



7.8.1 Textile Industry

Textile industry is one of the traditionally well-developed industries in Tamil Nadu. The textile mills are concentrated in Coimbatore, Tirupur, Salem, Palladam, Karur, Dindigul, Virudhunagar, Tirunelveli, Thoothukudi, Madurai and Erode. Tamil Nadu has about 3,50,000 power looms manufacturing cotton fabrics and accounts for 30% of India's exports of textiles products. Erode in Tamil Nadu is well known for marketing of handloom, power loom and readymade garments. Coimbatore is also known as the 'Manchester of Tamil Nadu'. Coimbatore, Tirupur and Erode contribute a major share to the state's economy through textiles. So, this region is referred as 'Textile Valley of Tamil Nadu'. Karur is known as 'The Textile capital of Tamil Nadu'.



Textile Industry

7.8.2 Silk Textiles

Tamil Nadu occupies fourth position in the country in silk production. Kancheepuram silk is unique in its quality and is known for its traditional value all over the world. The annual silk production in Tamil Nadu is around 1200 metric tons. Kancheepuram, Arani, Kumbakonam, Salem, Coimbatore, Madurai and Tirunelveli are the important silk-weaving centres in Tamil Nadu. Ramanathapuram has some specialised areas for the manufacturing of synthetic silk clothes.

7.8.3 Leather Industry

Tamil Nadu accounts for 60% of leather tanning processes of India and 38% of all leather footwear, garments and components. Hundreds of leather tanneries are located around Vellore and nearby towns, such as Ranipet, Ambur and Vaniyambadi. The Vellore district is the top

exporter of finished leather goods in the country. Vellore leather accounts for more than 37% of the country's export of leather and leather-related products (such as finished leathers, shoes, garments and gloves). Central Leather Research Institute (CLRI), a CSIR research laboratory, is located in Chennai.

7.8.4 Paper Industry

Many paper industries are located in the state. Tamil Nadu Newsprint and Papers Limited (TNPL) is a government of Tamil Nadu enterprise producing newsprint and printing and writing paper at its mill located at Kagithapuram in Karur district. It was started in 1979 with an installed capacity of 2.45 lakh MT of production per annum. TNPL is one of the most accomplished mills in the world, producing different varieties paper of acceptable quality primarily from bagasse and pulpwood. Other paper mills of the state are found in Pukkathurai of Kancheepuram district, Bhavanisagar, Pallipalayam, Paramathi Vellore, Coimbatore, Udumalaipet, Thoppampatti, Nilakkotai and Cheranmahadevi.

7.8.5 Cement Industry

Cement production and consumption continue to grow despite the general recession in the economy. India is one of the largest cement producers and ranked second in the world with an annual production capacity of 181 million tons. Tamil Nadu Cements Corporation Limited (TANCEM) is one among the major cement producers in Tamil Nadu operating two cement units: one at Ariyalur and another at Alangulam. Asbestos cement sheet plant at Alangulam and stoneware pipe unit at Virudhachalam are the other units of TANCEM. Sankar Cement, Zuari Cement, Ultratech Cement, Madras Cement and Dalmia Cement are the major private cement brands produced in Tamil Nadu.

7.9 Information Technology

According to National Association of Software and Services Companies (NASSCOM), the southern states continue to account for

GI Tag

GI (Geographical Indication) is a name or sign used on products which corresponds to a specific geographical location. It provides rights and protection of holders.

Some important GI Tags of Tamil Nadu are:

Place	Products
Arani	Silk
Kancheepuram	Silk
Coimbatore	Wet Grinder and Coracotton
Thanjavur	Paintings, Art plate, Doll and veenai
Nagercoil	Temple Jewellery
Erode	Turmeric
Salem	Venpattu(salem silk)
Bhavani	Jamakkalam
Madurai	Sungudi
Swamimalai	Bronze Icons
Nachiarkovil	Kuthuvilakku
Pattamadai	Mat
Nilgiri	Orthodox Embroidery
Mahabalipuram	Stone sculpture
Sirumalai	Hill banana
Eathomozhi	Coconut

more than half of the country's total export of software. Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh together account for 59.6% of India's total software exports. Tamil Nadu is the second largest software exporter in the country next to Karnataka.

A special economic zone (SEZ) is an area in which the business and trade laws are different from the rest of the country. SEZs are located within a country's national borders, and their aims include increased trade balance, employment, increased investment, job creation and effective administration.

7.9.1 Special Economic Zones

Special economic zones (SEZs) provide an internationally competitive and hassle-free environment for exports. Units in SEZ manufacture goods and provide a range of services. SEZs are located in Nanguneri, Ennore, Hosur and Perambalur. IT & ITES SEZ named TIDEL-II and TIDEL-III and Bio-Pharmaceuticals SEZ are located in Chennai and Coimbatore SEZ called the TIDEL Park-IV is located in the city.

The list of IT parks in Tamil Nadu

Tidel Park, Ascendas, Mahindra world city 4 IT & ITES SEZ TIDEL-II, IT & ITES SEZ TIDEL-III, Coimbatore SEZ - Tidel Park

7.9.2 Manufacturing & Engineering Industry

The manufacturing industry is one of the vibrant sectors of the state economy and contributes significantly to the industrial output. The manufacturing industry broadly covers manufacture of machinery and equipment, motor vehicles, basic metal and alloy industries, metal products and repair of capital goods.

Tamil Nadu's share of the industrial output is around 11–12% of the country's output and 15% of the country's exports excluding software. Tamil Nadu accounts for about 17% of India's software exports.

7.9.3 Automobile Industries

The share of Tamil Nadu in all-India production of automobiles and heavy vehicles is rather significant. Automobile industry plays a crucial role in the state's economy and has been one of the key driving factors, contributing 8 percent to state GDP and giving direct employment to 2,20,000 people.

Tamil Nadu accounts for about 21% of passenger cars, 33% of commercial vehicles and 35% of automobile components produced in India. Major automobile manufacturers like Ford, Hyundai, HM-Mitsubishi, Ashok Leyland, and TAFE have their manufacturing base in Tamil Nadu.



Automobile industry

7.9.4 Chemical & Plastic Industry

The chemical industry is one of the fastest growing sectors of industry and the economy. The sector contributes 13% to the state's GDP and constitutes 8% of the total exports of the country.

7.9.5 Handlooms and Powerlooms

The handloom sector in the state is the single largest cottage industry providing livelihood to a large number of rural people and promoting export earnings. The handloom sector and its related economic activities generate gainful employment for more than 4.29 lakh weaver households and 11.64 lakh weavers in the state. These societies mainly produce the cloth required for the scheme of 'Free Supply of Uniforms to School Children and Free Distribution of Sarees and Dhotis Scheme'.

7.9.6 Sugar Industry

Sugar industry in Tamil Nadu is an important agro-based industry. It plays a vital role in the economic development of the state, particularly in rural areas. The sugar industry provides large-scale direct employment to several thousands and indirect employment to several lakhs of farmers and agricultural labourers in the rural areas who are involved in cultivation of sugarcane, harvesting, transporting and other services. There are 34 sugar mills in Tamil Nadu, in which 16 are in the cooperative sector and 18 in the private sector.

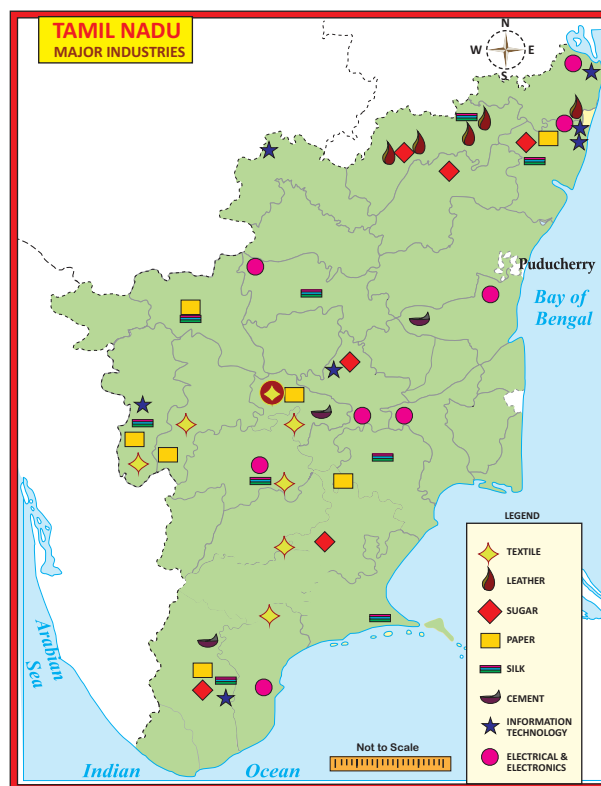
7.9.7 Tourism Industry

Tourism is considered as an industry because of its enormous potential in creating employment for a large number of people. In recent years, the state has emerged as one of the leading tourist destinations for both domestic and foreign tourists. Tourism in Tamil Nadu is promoted by Tamil Nadu Tourism Development Corporation (TTDC). The state currently ranks the highest among Indian states with about 25 crore arrivals (in 2013). The annual growth rate of this industry stood at 16%. Approximately 28 lakh foreign and 11 crore domestic tourists visit our state annually. The presence of ancient monuments, pilgrim centres, hill stations, a variety of natural landscapes, long coastline, along with rich culture and heritage make Tamil Nadu the best destination for tourists.

Activity

Plan a visit to a manufacturing unit in your city. Find out how raw materials are converted into finished products. Talk to the workers and manager to know more about the industry.

Plan a field visit with your social science teacher to visit a variety of geographical features, pilgrim centres, monuments, hill stations and prepare a field visit report.



7.10 Population

The term 'population' refers to the number of people living in a defined area. The statistical study of the characteristics of human population is called demography. Demographers make a deep and detailed study of the population. The rapid increase of population may be responsible for retarding economic growth. Hence, overpopulation is one of the major problems confronting our nation with all its evil effects.



7.10.1 Growth of Population in Tamil Nadu

The total population of Tamil Nadu is 72,140,703 or 7.21 crores as per 2011 Census. Its population was 6.24 crore in 2001 and registered a growth of nearly 1 crore population in a decade. The male and female population of the state in 2011 is 36,137,975 and 36,009,055 respectively and it was 31,400,909 and 31,004,770 in 2001. It shows that the population of the state is shared almost 50% each by male and female. The growth



rate of population in the decade 2001–2011 was 15.61% while in the previous decade it was 11.19%. The population of Tamil Nadu forms 5.96% of country's total population as per 2011 Census. In 2001, it was 6.07%.

7.10.2 Distribution of Population

Based on the actual size of population, Tamil Nadu is divided into the following regions.

7.10.3 Regions of High Population

Chennai has the highest urban population with 4.219 million people, but the city ranks second in the district-wise count, next to Coimbatore district, which had 4.224 million people as per 2011 Census. Coimbatore, Chennai, Tiruvallur, Kancheepuram, Villupuram, Dharmapuri, Salem, Madurai and Tirunelveli are the most populous districts in the state. Agriculture and industrial development are the main causes of high concentration of population of these districts.

7.10.4 Regions of Moderate Population

Tiruvannamalai, Cuddalore, Tiruchirappalli and Thanjavur districts have a population 30–35 lakh. Vellore, Dindugal, Virudhunagar and Thoothukudi districts each have a population of 15–20 lakh. Other than agriculture, small-scale industries and fishing along the coastal areas are the major occupations of people in these districts.

7.10.5 Regions of Sparse Population

The coastal districts Nagapattinam, Tiruvarur, Pudukottai, Ramanathapuram and Sivagangai have a less than 15 lakh. The Nilgiris district has a population of less than 10 lakh (764,826) population and it is the least populated district as per 2011 Census.

7.10.6 Population Density

The density of population in Tamil Nadu is 555 per sq.km as per the 2011 Census, while it was 480 per sq.km in 2001. The state ranks 12th

among the Indian states in population density. The national average density of population as per the 2011 Census is 382. Chennai is the densest district with 26,903 persons per sq.km followed by Kanyakumari (1106), Tiruvallur (1049), Kancheepuram (927), Madurai (823), Coimbatore (748), Cuddalore (702), Thanjavur (691), Nagapattinam (668), Salem (663), Vellore (646) and Tiruchirappalli (602). These are the regions with high density of population. The least density of population is recorded in the Nilgiris (288 per sq.km) and the other districts have moderate density of population.

7.10.7 Religion

Hinduism, Christianity and Islam are the major religions in the state. The Hindus constitute 87.58% of the population, followed by Christians (6.12%) and Muslims (5.86%). Jainism (0.12%), Sikhism (0.02%) and Buddhism (0.02%) also have a presence in the state.

People of other religions constitute 0.01% and the percentage of people with unstated religion is 0.26%.

7.10.8 Urban and Rural Population

As per 2011 Census, the urban population of Tamil Nadu is 3,49,17,440, which constitutes 48.40% of the total population of the state. The rural population of the state is 3,72,29,590, which constitutes 51.60% of the state population.

7.10.9 Sex Ratio

The sex ratio represents the number of females per 1000 males. The sex ratio of the state increased from 987 in 2001 to 995 in 2011. The sex ratio in India is 940 in 2011 as against 933 in 2001. It shows that the sex ratio is more favourable in the state than the country.

As per 2011 Census, 15 out of 32 districts have recorded the sex ratio of more than 1000 and a similar trend was noticed in the 2001 Census also. Only Sivagangai has recorded the sex ratio of exactly 1000. It is noted that

12 districts have the sex ratio of less than 1000 and it ranges between 980 and 1000. The highest sex ratio is found in the Nilgiris district (1041) followed by Thanjavur district (1031). The lowest sex ratio is reported in Dharmapuri district (946) followed by Salem district (954).

7.10.10 Literacy Rate

The literacy rate of Tamil Nadu as per the 2011 Census is 80.33%. It was 73.45% in 2001. The male literacy rate is 86.81% and the female literacy rate is 73.86%. The corresponding rates in 2001 were 82.42% for males and 64.43% for females. It may be observed that more than three-fourths of the population is literate among males in all the districts (except Dharmapuri), while more than two-thirds of the population is literate among females in all but eight districts. The districts are Dharmapuri (60.03%), Krishnagiri (64.86%), Tiruvannamalai (65.71%), Villupuram (63.51%), Salem (65.43%), Erode (65.07%), Perambalur (66.11%) and Ariyalur (62.22%).

The literacy rate for India as per 2011 census is 74.04, of which the male literacy rate is 82.14 and the female literacy rate is 65.46. In 2001, the literacy rate of India stood at 64.8. It was 75.3 and 53.7 for males and females, respectively. The district of Kanyakumari has reported the highest literacy rate (92.14%) while Dharmapuri district has the lowest rate (64.71%). A high level of literacy rate is also seen in Chennai (90.33%), Thoothukudi (86.52%), the Nilgiris (85.65%) and Kancheepuram (85.29%) districts.

7.11 Transport and Communication

7.11.1 Roadways

The State has a total road length of 167,000 km, In which 60,628km are maintained by state Highways Department. It ranks second in India with a share of over 20%



in total road projects under operation in the **Public-Private Partnership (PPP)** model.

Types of the Roads	Length (Km)
National Highways	4994
State Highways	57291
Corporation & Municipalities Road	23350
Panchayat Union	147543
Village Panchayat Union	21049
Others(Forest Roads)	3348
Commercial	12.13
Non commercial	20.34 Lakhs

Source: Statistical handbook of Tamil Nadu - 2017

7.11.2 Railways

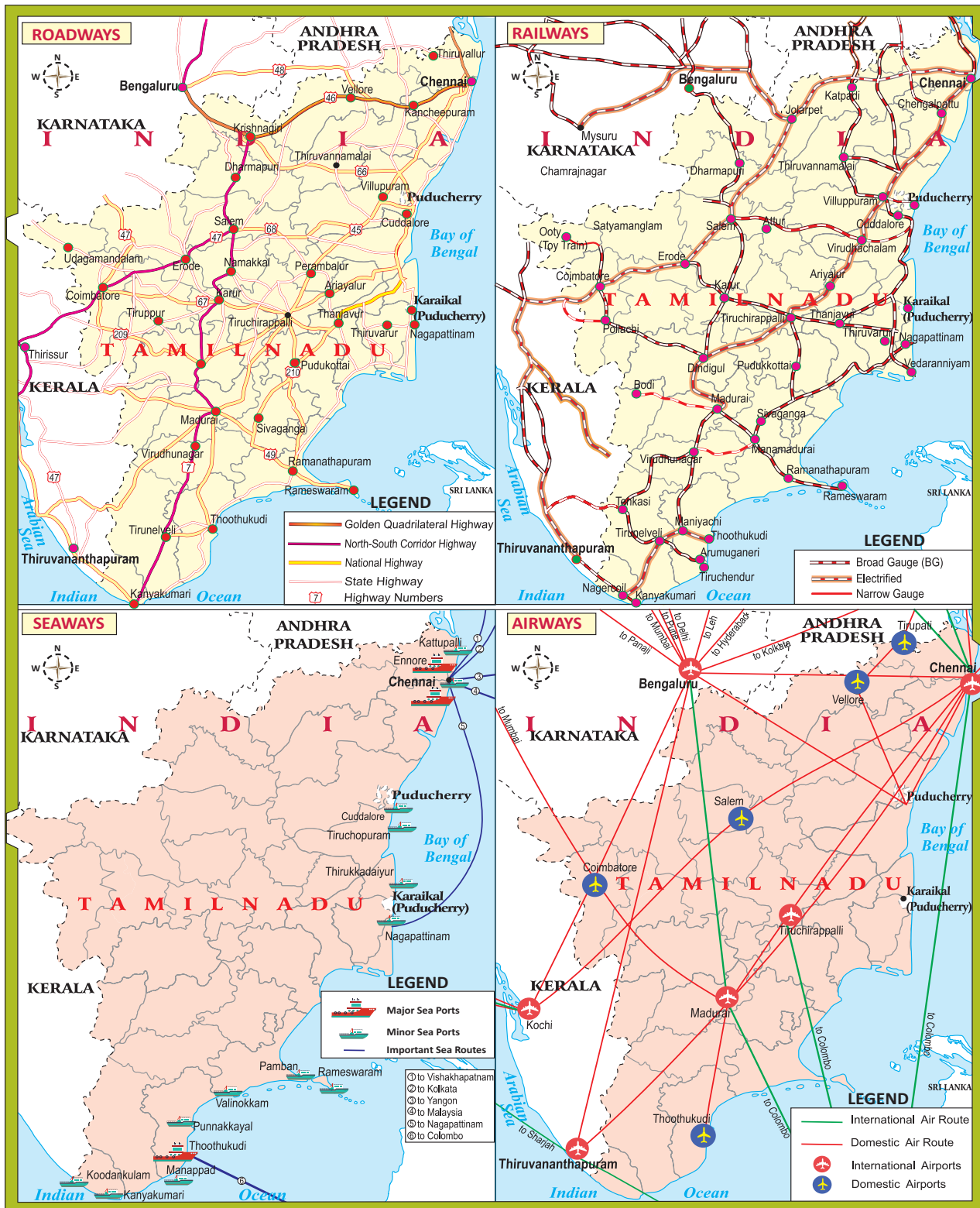
Tamil Nadu has a well-developed rail network as part of Southern Railway, headquartered at Chennai. The present Southern Railway network extends over a large area of India's southern peninsula, covering Tamil Nadu, Kerala, Puducherry, minor portions of Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh. Tamil Nadu has a total railway track length of 6,693 km with 690 railway stations in the state. The system connects it with most of the major cities in India. Main rail junctions in the state include Chennai, Coimbatore, Erode, Madurai, Salem, Tiruchirappalli and Tirunelveli. Chennai has a well-established suburban railway network, a **Mass rapid transport system(MRTS)** and is currently developing a Metro system, with its first underground stretch in operation since May 2017.

7.11.3 Airways

Tamil Nadu has four major international airports. Chennai International Airport is currently the third largest airport in India after Mumbai and Delhi. Other international airports in Tamil Nadu include Coimbatore, Madurai and Tiruchirappalli airports. It also has domestic airports at Tuticorin and Salem connecting several parts of the country. Increased industrial activity has given rise



TAMIL NADU - TRANSPORT



Not to Scale



to an increase in passenger traffic as well as freight movement, which has been growing at over 18% per year.

Do You Know?

NH - 44 is the longest national highway in Tamil Nadu which runs from Hosur to Kanniyakumari (627.2 km) Via Dharmapuri-Salem-Karur-Dindigul-Madurai-Tirunelveli.

NH - 785 is the shortest national highway in Tamil Nadu which runs from Madurai to Natham (38 km).

7.11.4 Waterways

Tamil Nadu has three major ports. They are in Chennai, Ennore and Tuticorin. It has an intermediate port at Nagapattinam and 15 minor ports. The ports are currently capable of handling over 73 million metric tonnes of cargo annually (24% share of India). All the minor ports are managed by the Tamil Nadu Maritime Board, Chennai Port. This is an artificial harbour and the second principal port in the country for handling containers. It is currently being upgraded to have a dedicated terminal for cars capable of handling 4,00,000 vehicles. Ennore intermediate port was recently converted as a major port and handles the major coal and ore traffic in Tamil Nadu.

7.12 Communication

Communication is derived from the Latin word *communicare*, meaning 'to share'. The act of conveying or exchanging information is called means of communication. They are mass communication and personal communication.

Postal Districts and Headquarters in Tamil Nadu

Zone /districts	Head quarters
Chennai	Chennai
Western	Coimbatore
Central	Thiruchirapalli
Southern	Madurai

7.13 Trade

Export and import are the two components of trade. Export means goods and services sold for foreign currency. Tamil Nadu contributes 12.2% to the country's exports. Import refers to goods and services are brought from overseas producers. Tamil Nadu imports many goods from outside. The difference between the values of export and import is called the balance of trade.

Major Exports of Tamil Nadu	
(i) Agricultural Products	tobacco, cereals, cotton, sugarcane, paddy, groundnut, spices and vegetables.
(ii) Leather Products	wallets, purses, pouches, handbags, belts, footwear and gloves
(iii) Gems and Jewellery	pearls, precious stones, gold jewellery, decorations and antiques
(iv) Chemicals and related products	paper, chemicals, rubber and glass.

7.14 Imports of Tamil Nadu

Machineries like transport equipment, machine tools, non-electrical machinery, electrical machinery, pharmaceutical products, petroleum, fertilizers and newsprint are its major imports. The state contributes 10.94% to the country's trade through major ports.

The above discussion shows that Tamil Nadu is an important state of India in terms of size, population, resources and economic development. People in the state are well secured. The new schemes introduced by the state government periodically have enabled notable progress in various fields.

7.15 Man made Disasters in Tamil Nadu

7.15.1 Definition

A disastrous events caused directly or indirectly by human actions are called as manmade disaster. Man-made disaster can include hazardous material spills, fires, groundwater contamination, transportation accidents, structure failures, mining accidents, explosions and acts of terrorism.

7.15.2 Industrial Disaster

Disasters caused by industrial companies either by accident, negligence, or incompetence fall under industrial disasters. Electrical faults seem to be the major reason for industrial disasters in the country. Overheating, aging of the material and use of sub-standard quality of electrical gadgets have been the main factors contributing to the increasing fire accidents in industries. Electricity is not just a life line; It can also take away life when handled improperly. Apart from these, explosions, leaking of poisonous gases, injuries and deaths caused by machines are the other causes of industrial disasters.

Sivakasi, is considered the “fireworks capital” of India. Series of industrial accidents causing deaths are reporting frequently in the regions of Virudhunagar and Sivakasi where a number of fireworks and match units are in operation. An explosion occurred on 5 September, 2012 in a private firework company. In this incident 40 workers were killed and more than 70 workers were injured. Various measures are being taken by the Government to reduce the fire accidents and casualties caused by industries. In another industrial accident which took place at Coimbatore on 2nd February 2016 in a tyre melting unit, six migrant workers were critically injured.

7.15.3 Stampede

A situation in which a large number of animals or people running in the same direction in an uncontrolled way causing injuries and deaths is called stamping


On 21st April, 2019 seven people were killed and 10 injured in a stampede during a local festival at a temple near Thuraiyur in Tamil Nadu. The incident took place when hundreds of devotees gathered at the Karuppasamy temple in Muthiampalayam village for the ‘padikasu’ (temple coin) distribution ceremony.



7.15.4 Mitigation

Hazard mitigation refers to any sustained action taken to reduce or eliminate the long-term risk to human life and property from hazardous conditions.

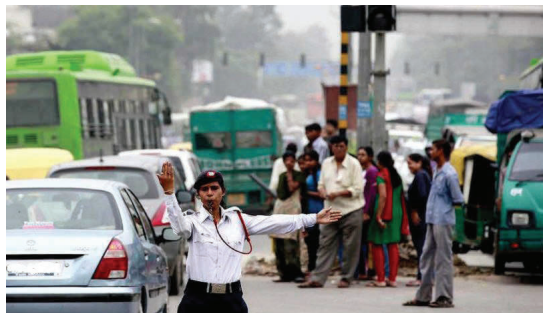
- Regular maintenance of machines and wires may reduce the frequency of accidents,
- Creating awareness and training the workers to be cautious during work hours may help them to reduce risk during disasters.
- Wearing specially designed dresses and other safety materials would help the workers to protect themselves from any serious injuries.
- Conducting periodical medical camps would help them to assess their health status. The Provision of having life insurance policies will secure their future.
- Besides these, the administration should be employees friendly and ready to extend their help in case of any untoward incidents.



Disaster emergency contact number
1077 - Control room of District Collector/Magistrate.

7.15.3 Road Accidents

The road accidents in India is on very high level. Tamil Nadu leads in the number of road accidents in the country. Increase in road traffic, high speed of vehicles and violation of traffic rules are the causes of major of accidents. In 2013, 14504 accidents had taken place in the state which resulted in 15563 deaths. In the ten years from 2002-2012, Tamil Nadu tops the list in number of road accidents among the states of India. It is reported that about 15 percent of accidents of the country takes place in Tamil Nadu. The figure of 2017 also puts Tamil Nadu on top with recording of 16157 deaths out of 147913 deaths recorded in the country. Death toll came down rapidly in 2018 to 12213 deaths, a decline of 24.5 percent.



Risk Reduction Measures

Before: Avoid Speeding, Drunk and driving, use helmets and seat belts and follow traffic rules

After: Call police or ambulance; seek medical attention; make an accurate record and exchange information.

KNOW - RISK...!
NO - RISK...!

7.15.6 Basic Road Safety Rules

- Aware of the road signals
- Stop, look and cross
- Listen and ensure whether a vehicle is approaching;
- Don't rush on roads;
- Cross roads in pedestrian crossings;
- Don't stretch hands while driving vehicles;
- Never cross road at bends and stay safe in a moving vehicle.

Accelerated changes in demographic and economic trends disturb the balance which leads to increased frequency and the negative impact of disaster. At present the society face a challenging mix of demographic, ecological and technological condition which make population more vulnerable to the impact of the calamities. Though the number of natural disasters are in decline than they were in the past, the increasing level of magnitude poses a threat. Besides the various measures taken by the government and the public, education on awareness regarding the disasters may help in the reduction of risks during disasters.

For the management of disasters in the state, the following forces and organizations are in service.

- (i) State Disaster Management Authority (Chairman-Chief Minister)
- (ii) Relief/ Disaster Management Department
- (iii) Police
- (iv) Forest Department
- (v) Fire and Civil Defence Services
- (vi) Health Services
- (vii) Transport Department
- (viii) Public Works Department
- (ix) Veterinary Services
- (x) Food & Civil Supplied Department.

The Organizations at District Level

- (i) District Magistrate (Chairman-District Collector)
- (ii) Revenue Department
- (iii) Civil Administration,
- (iv) Local Police,
- (v) Civil Defence,
- (vi) Fire & Emergency Services,
- (vii) Home Guards (also Local Community, Non-Governmental Organisations, Voluntary Agencies) etc.

SUMMARY

- Human Geography is the branch of geography dealing with how human activity affects or is influenced by the nature.
- Tropical crops like paddy, millets, pluses, oilseeds and plantation crops of tea, coffee, cashew, rubber etc are the major crops of Tamil Nadu.
- Tamil Nadu has 55.3% of lignite, 75% of vermiculite, 69% of dunitite, 59% of garnet, 52% of molybdenum and 30% of titanium.
- Man made disasters are drowning, Industrial risks, fire accidents stampede and road accidents.



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

1. The delta which is known as Granary of South India is
 - a) Cauvery delta
 - b) Mahanadi delta
 - c) Godavari delta
 - d) Krishna delta
2. Second staple food of the people of Tamil Nadu is
 - a) Pulses
 - b) Millets
 - c) Oilseeds
 - d) Rice
3. Literacy rate of Tamil Nadu as per 2011 census is
 - a) 80.32%
 - b) 62.33%
 - c) 73.45%
 - d) 80.33%
4. A major hydro-electric power project of Tamil Nadu is
 - a) Mettur
 - b) Papansam
 - c) Sathanur
 - d) Thungabhadra
5. Number of major and minor ports in Tamil Nadu are
 - a) 3 and 15
 - b) 4 and 15
 - c) 3 and 16
 - d) 4 and 15

II. Fill in the blanks

1. Agriculture of Tamil Nadu constitutes _____ % of its economy.
2. Sathanur dam is constructed across the river _____.
3. Tamil Nadu ranks _____ in India with a share of over 20% in total road projects under operation in the Public – Private Partnership (PPP).
4. _____ is the third largest airport in India after Mumbai and Delhi.
5. The difference between the value of exports and imports is called _____.

III. Match the following

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. Bauxite | – Salem |
| 2. Gypsum | – Servaroy hills |
| 3. Iron | – Coimbatore |
| 4. Limestone | – Tiruchirapalli |

IV. Questions 1-2 are assertion and reasoning type

1. **Assertion (A):** Coimbatore, Tiruppur and Erode region is called as The Textile Valley of Tamil Nadu.

Reason (R): They contribute a major share to the states economy through textiles.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) explains (A)



- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true but, (R) does not explain (A)
(c) (A) is true but (R) is false
(d) (A) is false but (R) is true

2. **Assertion (A):** The Nilgiris is the least populated district of Tamil Nadu

Reason (R): It is located in the western most part of Tamil Nadu.

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) explains (A)
(b) Both (A) and (R) are true but, (R) does not explain (A)
(c) (A) is true but (R) is false
(d) (A) is false but (R) is false

V. Answer the following in brief

1. Explain the cropping seasons of Tamil Nadu
2. Why is Coimbatore called the Manchester of Tamil Nadu?
3. Name the important multipurpose projects of Tamil Nadu.
4. What is MRTS?
5. List out the air ports and sea ports of Tamil Nadu.
6. Have you heard about any stampede in your district? write about that incident briefly.

VI. Distinguish between the following

1. Marine Fishing and inland fishing
2. Food crops and non- food crops
3. Surface water and ground water

VII. Give reasons for the following

1. Farmers switch over from inorganic to organic farming.
2. Cities are densely populated than the villages.

3. Karur is Called theTextile Capital of Tamil Nadu.
4. Mostly stampede occurs in Temples

VIII. Answer the following in a paragraph

1. Write about the plantation farming of Tamil Nadu.
2. Give an account on water resources of Tamil Nadu.
3. Bring out the mineral distribution in Tamil Nadu.
4. State the densely populated regions of Tamil Nadu and account for its high density.
5. Explain the different modes of transport available in Tamil Nadu.
6. Write about Road safety rules

IX. Map study

Mark the areas of major crops, minerals, dams, air ports and sea ports.



REFERENCE BOOKS

1. *Geography of Tamil Nadu* by Kumarasamy (2018), Varthamana Publication, T. Nagar, Chennai
2. *Manoramma Year book 2018*



ICT CORNER

Tamil Nadu: Disasters And Awareness

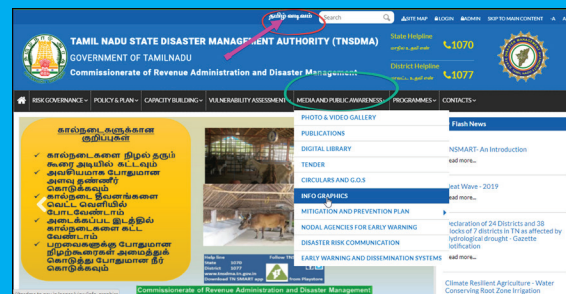
Through this activity you will learn about Disaster Management Activities in Tamil Nadu.



- Step – 1** Open the Browser and type the URL given below (or) Scan the QR Code.
- Step – 2** Change 'Language' in Top menu and go to 'Media and Public Awareness' and select 'Infographics'.
- Step – 3** Click on 'Download' to view details of precautions by Tamil Nadu State Disaster Management Authority



Step-1



Step-2



Step-3

- * Pictures are indicatives only.
- * If browser requires, allow Flash Player or Java Script to load the page



B376_10_SOCIAL_EM



A-Z GLOSSARY

Agriculture: It is the process of producing food, feed, fibre and many other desired products by the cultivation of certain plants and the raising of domesticated plants.

Back waters: The part of a river which are stagnant and do not reach the sea as they are pushed by the current.

Barter: A direct exchange of goods between any two parties. No money is involved in the trade.

Bay: A broad inlet of the sea where the land curves inwards

Beach: A pebbly or sandy shore, especially by the sea between high- and low-water marks

Bhangar: Older alluvium soil found in 30 mts above flood level.

Biogas: The production of methane and carbon- di- oxide from plants and animal wastes

Commercial crops: Crops which are cultivated to be sold to gain profit from sale.

Cyclone: A cyclone is a large scale air mass that rotates around a strong centre of low atmospheric pressure.

Dams: A barrier constructed to hold back water and raise its level, forming a reservoir used to generate electricity, supply water and other uses.

Delta: A triangular shaped alluvial tract formed at the mouth of a river.

Density of population: The average number of inhabitants living per sq km area

Distributary: A branch or outlet which leaves a main river and does not rejoin it, carrying its water to the sea or a lake.

Doab: A land between the two converging rivers.

Drought: It is a natural disaster of below average precipitation in a given region resulting water shortage.

Drowning: death caused by being underwater and not being able to breath.

Economic activities: Actions that involve the production, distribution and consumption of goods and services at all levels within a society

Endemism: The ecological state of a species being unique to a defined geographic location, such as an island, nation

Estuary: Mouth of a river where it enters the sea through a single channel with a hollow.

Exports: Goods dispatched from one country to another.

Flood: A large amount of water that has spread from a river

Foreign exchange: The mechanism or process by which payments between any two places operating under different national currency systems are effected without passing of actual money or gold, etc.

Fossil fuel: Any naturally occurring carbon or hydrocarbon coal, oil and natural gas

Harbour: An extensive stretch of deep water near the seashore where vessels can anchor securely. It is used for exports and imports of goods.

Ghat: A mountain pass or a flight of steps leading down to a river.

Imports: Goods bought into a country from another country.

Irrigation: Watering of plants through artificial means.



Khadar: Newer alluvium soil found in valley flooded almost every year.

Land slide: sudden fall of mass of the rocks etc down side of the mountain

Literates: The people with the ability to read and write.

Leaching: It is a process in rainy seasons which all the soluble minerals are washed away by runoff water so the soil is infertile

Latitude: The imaginary parallel lines which run east to west on the globe.

Longitude: The imaginary vertical lines which run north to south on the globe.

Mangroves: Salt tolerant evergreen forest ecosystem found mainly in tropical and sub-tropical coastal and/or inter-tidal regions.

Manchester: An industrial city and metropolitan district in north-western England/items for the home made of cotton, linen, etc., such as sheets, pillowcases, or tablecloths.

Meteorology: The science of weather.

Mineral: A solid, naturally occurring inorganic substance.

Mixed farming: It is a type of farming which involves both the growing of crops and the raising of livestock simultaneously in a land holding.

Monsoon: Season

Multipurpose projects: Construction of dams across rivers aimed at many purposes.

Natural resources: Materials or substances occur in nature and are used for economic gain

Open Forest: Lands with forest cover having a canopy density between 10 to 40 percent.

Ore: It is a deposit in the earth crust with one or more value minerals

Perennial Rivers: The rivers which flow throughout the year and have permanent source of water.

Plain: An Extensive area of flat or gently undulating land.

Plantation agriculture: Well organized and managed farming with a single crop on a large scale. It is a capital intensive farming. Tea, coffee and rubber are the major plantation crops.

Plateau: An extensive elevated area of relatively a flat land.

Population: All the people living in a particular country, area, or place

Population census: Official enumeration of population along with economic and social attributes of a region at a specified interval.

Population density: The average number of people living per unit of area particularly per square km.

Port: The commercial part of a harbour with the facility of loading and unloading of goods and space for the storage of cargo.

Protected Forest(PF): An area notified under the provisions of the Indian Forest Act or other State Forest Acts, having limited degree of protection. In protected forest all activities are permitted unless prohibited.

Regions: An area, especially part of a country or the world having definable characteristics but not always fixed boundaries.

Religion: a particular system of faith and worship.

Reserved Forest (RF): An area constituted under the provisions of the Indian Forest Act or other State Forest Acts, having full degree of protection.



In Reserved forests all activities are prohibited unless permitted.

Reservoirs: A large natural or artificial lake used as a source of water supply.

Sedimentary rock: A rock which has been formed by the consolidation of sediments.

Sex ratio: The number of females per 1000 males.

Soil: Soil is the uppermost layer of the land surface composed of minerals, organic matter, living organisms and water

Soil conservation: Prevention of soil from erosion and protecting its fertility.

Soil erosion: Removal of top soil

Solar power: Heat radiation from the sun converted into electricity

Stampede: a situation in which a large number of animals or people running in the same direction in an uncontrolled way causing injuries and deaths

Standard Time: The local time of central meridian of ones country.

Strait: A narrow passage of water connecting two seas or two other large areas of water.

Subcontinent: A large area of a continent that stands distinct from the rest of the continent and possesses almost all the characteristics of a continent.

Subsistence intenensive farming: It is a type of farming in which crops grown are consumed by the family with little surplus to sell.

Thermal power station: An electricity generating plants which burns coal or oil.

Tributary: A river or stream which contributes its water to main river.

Tropical cyclone: A localized, very intense low-pressure wind system, forming over tropical oceans and with winds of hurricane force.

Unclassed Forest: An area recorded as forest but not included in reserved or protected forest category.

UNESCO World Heritage Site: Representing the main ecosystem of the planet in which genetic resisources would be protected, and where research on the ecosystem as well as monitoring and training work could be carried.



CIVICS

Unit - 4

India's Foreign Policy



Learning Objectives

After studying this lesson, students will be able to

- Identify the basic principles of India's foreign policy
- Explain the meaning and significance of non-alignment
- Analyse the stages of our foreign policy
- Explain the importance of foreign policy
- Recognise the difference between domestic policy and foreign policy



Introduction

Foreign policy can be defined as a country's policy that is conceived, designed and formulated to safeguard and promote her national interests in her external affairs, in the conduct of relationships with other countries, both bilaterally and multilaterally. It seeks to secure the best interests of the people, territory and economy of the country. It is a direct reflection of country's traditional values and overall national policies, her aspirations and self-perception. Nations have also been interdependent. Interdependence has been an incontrovertible fact of international relations. An objective and goal-oriented foreign policy has the potential to achieve improved relations with other nations and accelerate growth. The main tools of foreign policy are treaties and executive

The Ministry of External Affairs of India also known as Foreign Ministry comes under Government of India is responsible for the conduct of foreign relations of India. The foreign Service Training Institute, New Delhi established in 1986 provides training for officers of Indian Foreign Services (IFS).

agreements, appointing ambassadors, foreign aid, international trade and armed forces.

The Constitution of India 1950

Article 51

Lays down Directive Principles of India's foreign policy.

The state shall endeavour to

- Promote International peace and security
- Maintain just and honourable relations between nations
- Foster respect for international law and international organisation
- Encourage settlement of international disputes by arbitration

4.1 Main Objectives of Our Foreign Policy

- ◆ National security
- ◆ National prosperity
- ◆ Increasing the number of friendly nations
- ◆ Achieving world peace and enable every nation to peacefully co-exist
- ◆ Economic development

The Buddha advocated avoidance of force and adoption of peaceful means to settle disputes between states.

4.2 Panchsheel

(derived from Sanskrit words, *panch* = five, *sheel* = virtues)

The Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence (Panchsheel) between India (Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru) and China (Premier Chou-En-Lai) was signed on 28 April 1954, which stated that the two governments entered into an agreement based on the following principles:



These principles were incorporated in the Bandung Declaration signed in the Afro-Asian Conference held in 1955 in Indonesia.

4.3 Basic Determinants of a Foreign Policy

- ◆ Geographical position and size of territory
- ◆ Nation's history, traditions and philosophical basis
- ◆ Natural resources
- ◆ The compulsion of economic development
- ◆ Political stability and structure of government
- ◆ The necessity of peace, disarmament and non-proliferation of nuclear weapons

- ◆ Military strength
- ◆ International milieu

Foreign Policy in 1950s and 1960s

The period from Independence through 1950s and 1960s constituted the most idealistic phase of India's foreign policy under the guidance of India's first Prime Minister, Jawaharlal Nehru. The new nations that got independence after the long period of colonial struggle found themselves in a very difficult situation with respect to economic development. So it was necessary to align with either of the blocs – United States of America (USA) or Union Soviet Socialist Republic (USSR). Nehru, India's first Prime Minister, was opposed to the rivalry of the two superpowers (America and Russia) who were trying to extend their influence over the newly emerged nations of Asia and Africa. So he chose the path of Non-Alignment (i.e., not aligning with any bloc) in the face of the bipolar order of the Cold War and tried to form a third bloc of nations in international affairs. The aim of India's foreign policy of that time was 'world co-operation, world peace, end of colonial imperialism, racial equality and non-alignment'.

"Broadly, non-alignment means not tying yourself off with military blocs.... It means trying to view things, as far as possible, not from the military point of view, though that has to come in sometimes, but independently, and trying to maintain friendly relations with all countries".

– Jawaharlal Nehru

4.4 The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) in 1961

The term 'Non-Alignment' was coined by V. Krishna Menon in his speech at the United Nations in 1953. Non-alignment has been regarded as the most important feature of India's foreign policy. It aimed to maintain national independence in foreign affairs by not joining any military alliance. It was the

largest political grouping of countries in a multilateral fora. The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) was formed with a membership of 120 countries and 17 states as observers and 10 international organisations. Non-aligned countries have been successful in establishing a foundation of economic co-operation among underdeveloped countries. Another noteworthy fact is that it has transformed from a political movement to an economical movement.

The founding fathers of Non-Aligned Movement : Jawaharlal Nehru of India, Tito of Yugoslavia, Nasser of Egypt, Sukarno of Indonesia, and Kwame Nkumarah of Ghana were the founding fathers of NAM.

India's Foreign Policy during Cold War Era



First Nuclear Test at Pokhran (Rajasthan)

The Non-alignment roots did not prevent India from entering into an alignment with the Soviet Union by the Indo-Soviet treaty of 1971 (20-year pact of 'peace, friendship and co-operation'). Then India embarked on a substantial programme of military modernisation. In 1974, India also conducted its first nuclear test at Pokhran under Subterranean Nuclear Explosions Project, in response to China's nuclear test in 1964 at Lop Nor.

Changing global conditions determine the foreign policy details, yet India's foreign policy was based on certain well defined principles. These principles are not mere idealistic but pragmatist too. India got her political freedom in the aftermath of a disastrous Second World

War, and India had to be redeemed from acute poverty illiteracy, and chaotic socio-economic conditions. Hence our new nation could not afford to military entanglements and military alliances. Independent India had to defend its democratic system, and at the same time evolve and enforce means to salvage the nation from backwardness. Avoidance of military blocs was then not an option but a necessity. Now Alliance did mean neutrality, but the freedom of nations to decide on issues independently. Non-alliance did not mean demilitarisation of nations. It was meant to ensure de-escalation of conflicts and tension. To a large extent, it enabled India to concentrate on socio-economic development. India withstood two wars with Pakistan during this period. The disastrous Sino-Indian conflict would not make Non-alliance un-pragmatic and it revealed inadequacy in military build-up. Even wither discarding the 'Non-Alliance' India could enormously strengthen her defence system and could become a nuclear power. Flaws or faults in details of foreign policy executions have been addressed time and again but India's basic policy of non-Alliance is still in force. The NAM is meant for mutual assistance among nations for peace and progress.

The foreign policy stance of India was

- ◆ Supporting the cause of decolonisation
- ◆ Staunch opponent of the apartheid regime in South Africa
- ◆ Accepted the importance of defence preparedness

New Developments: in the 1990s and the 20th Century

During the 1990's along with the fall of the Soviet Union, a new global economic order (Liberalisation, Privatisation, and Globalisation) emerged with the support of the western powers. Unipolar (USA centric) world along with the emerging new economic order compelled the nations including India to revise their foreign and economic policies. India entered into pacts with global

economic forum (GATT) and entered into bilateral, trilateral, multilateral agreements. Its nuclear experiments resulted in intimidatory reactions from the western world.

This shifts in India's policy manifested in various ways such as

- ◆ Better relations with China – the Look East Policy (1992)
- ◆ The second nuclear test at Pokhran (1998) in Rajasthan
- ◆ Defence procurement relationship with Israel
- ◆ Energy diplomacy with Arab countries and Iran
- ◆ Agreeing to US nuclear missile defence program and
- ◆ India's vote against Iran at the International Atomic Energy Agency

India in the Resurgent 21st Century

The structure of the international system has changed. The foremost task of India's foreign policy is to enable the domestic transformation of India. By this, we mean making possible the transformation of India's economy and society while promoting our values of pluralism. From a foreign policy perspective, economic prosperity is now seen as the key to India's attainment of a Great Power status. At present, our foreign policy acts as a means to generate inward investment, business and technology for domestic growth and development. This will be facilitated by enhancing regional co-operation and stability in South Asia.

India has adjusted to meet the needs of intensified economic engagement with the world, which is designed to meet the needs of an increased inflow of capital, technology, ideas and innovation for our development and our re-emergence as one of the world's leading economies. The consistent high economic growth in this period has not only helped empower a large number of our citizens but has also led to increased engagement of India with the outside world.

India engages with current global subjects and articulates its international policies in order to gain a prominent place and makes its presence felt in on a global scale. It has joined new global groups like the Group of 20 (G-20), India, Brazil, South Africa (IBSA), and Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa (BRICS), which gives more scope for India to play a larger role in global affairs.

India's global security concerns are reflected in its military modernisation, maritime security and nuclear policies.

India has emerged as a major voice in global decision-making and management, and as a bridge and balancing power in the emerging global strategic architecture. The response of our policymakers at economic, political and strategic level have enabled India to emerge as a potential great power though it faces enormous developmental challenges. These challenges include sustaining the country's economic growth rate, ensuring energy and security. Non-military issues like climate change, energy security, competition for scarce resources, food and water security, pandemics and migration. Though numerous and formidable, these challenges are not beyond the reach of India's policy establishment.

4.5 Basic Concepts of India's Foreign Policy

- ◆ Preservation of national interest
- ◆ Achievement of world peace
- ◆ Disarmament
- ◆ Fostering cordial relationship with other countries
- ◆ Solving conflicts by peaceful means
- ◆ Independence of thought and action as per the principle of NAM
- ◆ Equality in conducting international relations
- ◆ Anti-colonialism, anti-imperialism, anti-racism

Policy of Disarmament

Our tradition and national ethos is to practice disarmament. As a peace-loving nation, India champions the cause of qualitative and quantitative disarmament right from the beginning. Since independence, global non-proliferation has been a dominant theme of India's nuclear policy. So India supported UN disarmament programme. Indian nuclear programme in 1974 and 1998 is only done for strategic purposes.

The two themes of India's nuclear doctrine are

- ◆ No first use
- ◆ Credible minimum deterrence

It has decided not to use nuclear power for 'offensive purposes' and would never use against any non-nuclear state. Indo-US civilian nuclear deal marks a significant progress in India's foreign policy.

4.6 SAARC – South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation

SAARC is an economic and geopolitical organisation of eight countries that are primarily located in South Asia. The SAARC policies aim to promote welfare economics, collective self-



reliance among the countries of South Asia and to accelerate socio-cultural development in the region. SAARC Disaster Management Centre was set up at New Delhi. The Centre is a sleek body of professionals working on various dimensions of disaster risk reduction and management in South Asia. SAARC satellite is a proposed communication-cum-meteorology satellite by Indian Space Research Organisation (ISRO) for the SAARC region.



The member countries are Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Nepal, Maldives, Pakistan and Sri Lanka.

Foreign Policy is a combination of strategies carefully formulated by a nation for maintaining relationship with other nations.

Diplomacy is the instrument for implementing foreign policy of a state.

4.7 Contemporary context: change and continuity in India's Foreign Policy

a) Prioritising an integrated neighbourhood: Neighbourhood First policy

India's foreign policy has always regarded the concept of neighbourhood as one of widening concentric circles, around the central axis of historical and cultural commonalities. India gives political and diplomatic priority to her immediate neighbours and the Indian Ocean Island states such as Maldives. This centrality of neighbours in India's foreign policy stems from the clear understanding that a peaceful periphery is essential for India to achieve her multifarious developmental goals. India provides neighbours with support as needed in the form of resources, equipment and training. Greater connectivity and integration is provided so as to improve the free flow of goods, people, energy, capital and information.

b) Bridging diplomacy and development

One of the major objectives of India's foreign policy has been to leverage international partnership for India's domestic development. This includes improving technological access, sourcing capital, gaining market access and securing natural resources.

c) A gradual transition from 'Look East' to 'Act East' policy

South East Asia begins with North East India. Myanmar is our land bridge to the countries of the Association of the Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN). The purpose is to ensure a stable and multipolar balance of power in the Indo-Pacific and to become an integral part of Asia. This policy emphasises a more productive role for ASEAN and East Asian countries. The three big elements in our eastern policy are stronger emphasis on physical connectivity, commercial and security-related.

d) Economic development

Currently India's political moves are being influenced by economic imperatives. Many nations are moving to forge better relationship with India. Accelerated, balanced and inclusive economic development is India's primary goal. India achieves this by ensuring peace and security and by leveraging the nation's international partnership, to obtain all that is needed to fuel economic development, markets, investment, technology, linkage, mobility of personnel, fair global governance and a stable and fair environment conducive for growth.

e) India as a leading power

India is a member of the G20, the East Asia Summit and the BRICS coalition, a testament to its status as a large country with a fast-growing economy. India aspires for permanent membership on the UN Security Council. And India now has an increasing range of interests, which are anchored in different parts of the world and which stem from a wide range of factors such as the need to secure energy, vital natural resources, the imperative of maintaining open shipping lanes, seeking investments and trade opportunities overseas and the need to secure trade access.

Conclusion

Today India has formal diplomatic relations with most of the nations, besides being the world's second most populous country, largest democracy and one of the fastest growing country. Though India is not in any major military alliance, our relations with the major powers have acquired a strategic depth. Our common fight against terrorism is a particular element of strength. India has sought to achieve its security and socio-economic advancement while at the same time working for peace, freedom, progress and justice to all nations and peoples. Thus India adheres to the foreign policy principle that '**in international relations there is no permanent friend and no permanent foe, only the interests are permanent**'. New challenges forced India to adjust to new realities. Even then, basic framework of its foreign policy remained more or less the same.

Difference between Domestic Policy and Foreign Policy

Domestic Policy	Foreign Policy
<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Domestic policy is the nation's plan for dealing issues within its own nation.◆ It includes laws focusing on domestic affairs, social welfare, health care, education, civil rights, economic issues and social issues.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Foreign policy is the nation's plan for dealing with other nations.◆ Trade, diplomacy, sanctions, defence, intelligence and global environments are the types of foreign policy.

SUMMARY

- The foreign policy of the government concerns the policy initiatives made towards other States.
- The Ministry of External Affairs is responsible for carrying out the foreign policy of India.
- A goal – oriented foreign policy has the potential to achieve improved relations with other nations.
- After independence joined the Commonwealth Nations and strongly supported independence movement in other countries.
- During cold war adopted the policy of Non-Aligning itself with any major power blocs.
- Foreign policy is currently focused on improving relations with neighbouring countries and major global powers.

A-Z GLOSSARY

External affairs	matters having with international relations	வெளியுறவு
multilateral	involving more than two countries	பலதரப்பு
procurement	process of buying	கொள்முதல்
pluralism	the practice of holding more than one benefice at a time	பன்மைக்கோட்பாடு
pandemics	an epidemic disease	பெருங்கொள்ளை நோய்
ethos	the characteristic spirit of culture	பண்பாடு



EXERCISE

I Choose the correct answer



- Which Minister plays a vital role in molding foreign policy of our country?
 - Defense Minister
 - Prime Minister
 - External Affairs Minister
 - Home Minister
- The Panchaseel treaty has been signed between
 - India and Nepal
 - India and Pakistan
 - India and China
 - India and Sri Lanka
- Which article of Indian constitution directs to adopt foreign policy?
 - Article 50
 - Article 51
 - Article 52
 - Article 53
- Apartheid is
 - An international association
 - Energy diplomacy
 - A policy of racial discrimination
 - None of these
- The Agreement signed by India and China in 1954 related to
 - Trade and Commerce
 - Restoration of normal relations
 - Cultural exchange programmes
 - The Five Principles of Co existence

6. Which is not related to our foreign policy
 - a) World co operation
 - b) World peace
 - c) Racial equality
 - d) Colonialism
7. Which of the following country is not the founder member of NAM?
 - a) Yugoslavia
 - b) Indonesia
 - c) Egypt
 - d) Pakistan
8. Find the odd one
 - a) Social welfare
 - b) Health care
 - c) Diplomacy
 - d) Domestic affairs
9. Non-Alliance means
 - a) being neutral
 - b) freedom to decide on issues independently
 - c) demilitarisation
 - d) none of the above
10. Non – military issues are
 - a) Energy security
 - b) Water security
 - c) Pandemics
 - d) All the above.

II Fill in the blanks

1. India conducted its first nuclear test at _____.
2. At present our foreign policy acts as a means to generate _____ for domestic growth and development.
3. _____ is the instrument for implementing foreign policy of a state.
4. _____ was India's policy in the face of the bipolar order of the cold war.
5. Our tradition and national ethos is to practice _____.

III. Consider the following statement and tick the appropriate answer.

1. Arrange the following in the correct chronological order and choose the correct answer from the code given below.
 - (i) Panchsheel
 - (ii) Nuclear test at Pokhran
 - (iii) Twenty-year Treaty
 - (iv) First Nuclear test
 - a) (i), (iii), (iv), (ii) b) (i), (ii), (iii), (iv)
 - c) (i), (ii), (iv), (iii) d) (i), (iii), (ii), (iv)
2. Which of the following is not about NAM?
 - (i) The term Non-Alignment was coined by V. Krishna Menon
 - (ii) It aimed to maintain national independence in foreign affairs by joining any military alliance
 - (iii) At present it has 120 member countries.
 - (iv) It has transformed to an economical movement
 - a) (i) and (ii) b) (iii) and (iv)
 - c) (ii) only d) (iv) only
3. Write true or false against each of the statement.
 - a) During Cold War India tried to form a third bloc of nations in the international affairs.
 - b) The Ministry of Home Affairs is responsible for the conduct of the country's foreign relations.
 - c) The nuclear test at Pokhran was done under Subterranean Nuclear Explosions Project.
4. **Assertion(A):** India aligned with Soviet Union by the Indo-Soviet treaty on 1971.
Reason(B): This began with a disastrous Indo –China war of 1962
 - a) A is correct and R explains A
 - b) A is correct and R does not explain A
 - c) A is correct and R is Wrong
 - d) Both A and R are wrong.

5. **Assertion(A):** India has formal diplomatic relations with most of the nations.

Reason(R): India is the World's second most populous country.

- A is correct and R explains A
 - A is correct and R does not explain A
 - A is wrong and R is correct
 - Both are wrong
6. Avoidance of military blocs was necessity for India after political freedom. Because India had to redeemed from
- acute poverty
 - illiteracy
 - chaotic socio-economic conditions
 - all the above

IV Match the following

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|----------------|
| 1. Indian Ocean island | - | 1955 |
| 2. Land bridge to ASEAN | - | 1954 |
| 3. Panchsheel | - | Maldives |
| 4. Afro Asian Conference | - | Foreign Policy |
| 5. World Peace | - | Myanmar |

V Give short answers

- What is foreign policy?
- Explain India's nuclear policy.
- Highlight the contribution by Nehru to India's foreign policy.
- Differentiate: Domestic policy and Foreign policy
- List any four guiding principles of Panchsheel?
- What was the reason for India to choose the path of Non-Alignment?
- In what ways are India's global security concerns reflected?
- List out the member countries of SAARC.
- Name the architects of the Non-Aligned movement.
- Mention the main tools of foreign policy.

VI. Answer in detail

- Write a detailed note on Non-alignment.
- Discuss the core determinants of India's foreign policy?
- Make a list on basic concepts followed by India to maintain friendly relations with its neighbours.

VII. Project and activity

- Identify any two aspects of India's foreign policy that you would like to retain and to change if you were the decision maker.



REFERENCE BOOKS

- Mahendra Kumar, *Theoretical Aspects of International Policies*, Agra, Shivalal Agarwala & company 1984
- Prakash Chandra, *Theories of International Relations*: Aman publishing
- S. Ganguly, *India's Foreign Policy*, Oxford University Press
- Dutt V.P., *India's Foreign Policy in a changing world*, Vikas Publishing House Pvt. Ltd., Noida (2009)
- Dixit J.N., *India's Foreign Policy and its Neighbours*, Gyan Publishing House, Delhi (2001)
- Khanna V.N., and Leslie K Kumar., *Foreign Policy of India*, Vikas Publishing House Pvt. Ltd., (2018), Noida
- Muhkund Dubey., *India's Foreign Policy*, Orient Black Swan Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi (2015)
- Shah, S.k., *India's Foreign Policy (Past, Present and Ties with the world)*, Vij Books India Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi (2017)



ICT CORNER

India's Foreign Policy

Through this activity you will know about details of Indian embassy's in the world.



Step – 1 Open the Browser and type the URL given below (or) Scan the QR Code.

Step – 2 Click on 'Useful Links' in menu and select 'India Missions Abroad'

Step – 3 Click on respective country to view details on Indian Missions Abroad



Step-1



Step-2



Step-3

* Pictures are indicatives only.

* If browser requires, allow Flash Player or Java Script to load the page



B376_10_SOCIAL_EM

Unit - 5

India's International Relations



Learning Objectives

After studying this lesson, students will be able to

- become familiar with our policies with the neighbouring countries
- understand the importance of India's policy towards developed nations
- gain knowledge about India's relationships with international organisations
- recognise the achievement of BRICS and OPEC
- imbibe the value of India's position among world countries



A bad neighbour is a misfortune, as much as a good one is a great blessing.

– Hesiod

Introduction

Independent India has been consistently fostering world peace and international co-operation. India abjured military alliances, but has been active in cooperating and co-ordinating with other nations for peace and economic development. As the first Prime Minister of India Jawaharlal Nehru stated “We can neither be absolutely dependent or independent, but we live in a world of interdependence.”

India would prefer a peaceful, wealthy neighbourhood responsive to its own needs and wishes. India has always been known as a peace-loving country and has strived hard to champion the cause of peace in the world. For the country to progress in an adequate manner, the maintenance of international relations has been regarded as an important area. Being a country with a huge population, India is surrounded by many neighbouring countries with whom she has traditionally tried to maintain friendly and good neighbourly relations.



5.1 India and Its Neighbours

India's position is unique in its neighbourhood. India's neighbours had been a part of a homogenous culture prevailing in the Indian subcontinent for last five thousand years.

- ◆ India is a vast country with Pakistan and Afghanistan to the north-west
- ◆ China, Nepal, Bhutan to the north
- ◆ Bangladesh to the east
- ◆ Myanmar to the far east

Sri Lanka (from south-east) and Maldives (from south-west) are two countries that lie close to India separated by the Indian Ocean. India has cordial historical, religious, economic, ethnic and linguistic relationship with all of these countries. Let us know about India's relations with its neighbours.

The countries that share the most number of neighbours touching its borders are China and Russia.

India and Afghanistan

Indo-Afghan relation was strengthened by the Strategic Partnership Agreement (SPA). SPA provides assistance to re-build Afghan's infrastructure, institutions, agriculture, water, education, health and providing duty-free access to the Indian market. India helped Afghans in the construction of Salma Dam in the Herat Province. India announced 500 scholarships for the children of the martyrs of Afghan Security Forces in school and colleges both in Afghanistan and in India. India is also supporting Afghanistan to improve its public health and small-scale industries. India is at the forefront of the promotion of investment in Afghanistan and a consortium of public and private Indian

From the Indus Civilisation to the kingdom of Chandragupta Maurya, India and Afghanistan have a deep-rooted multi-faceted relationship. During the reign of Kanishka, a large number of Indian missionaries went to China, Central Asia and Afghanistan to preach their religion.

Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan of Baluchistan (a border province in today's Pakistan) was a prominent leader of the Indian Independence movement and active supporter of the Indian National Congress.

companies has been selected to make one of the biggest investments in the mining sector. To harness India's sports potential, India has built Kandahar International Cricket Stadium. India's Self Employed Women's Association imparts training on sustainable livelihood and to be self-reliant. Thus India is contributing proactively to the development of Afghanistan in the form of monetary aids and funds.

India and Bangladesh

India was the first nation to acknowledge Bangladesh (the former East Pakistan) as an independent country. India and Bangladesh share the longest land boundary of 4096.7 kilometres. India has plans to implement the proposed rail connectivity between Agartala (India) and Akhaura (Bangladesh). Bangladesh has granted India road transit facility through its territories from Kolkata to Agartala via Dhaka under BBIN-MVA (Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Nepal Motor Vehicle Agreement). The Farakka accord on sharing of Ganga waters signed in 1977 is a historic agreement. India and Bangladesh share 54 common rivers and a bilateral Joint River Commission is working to maximise benefits from common river systems. The Government of India provides grant assistance for project under 'Aid to Bangladesh' for the construction of buildings, laboratories, dispensaries and deep tube wells. In addition, scholarships are granted by ICCR (Indian Council for Cultural Relations) every year to students from Bangladesh and it has initiated a Tagore Chair in University of Dhaka. Both the countries jointly inaugurated the construction of 130-kilometre Bangladesh India Friendship Pipeline between Siliguri in West Bengal and Parbatipur (Bangladesh).

The Teen Bigha Corridor is a strip of land belonging to India on the West Bengal-Bangladesh border, which was leased to Bangladesh in 2011.



India and Bhutan

Bhutan, a small Himalayan kingdom, popularly known as a land of thunderbolt, is one of the poorest countries of the world. The diplomatic relations between India and Bhutan were established in 1968 with the appointments of a resident representative of India in Thimphu. Bhutan is a landlocked nation. So it is highly dependent on India for access to sea. India is the principal contributor in the economic development of Bhutan. India declared the bilateral trade relation known as 'Bharat to Bhutan' (B2B). India provides scholarship to Bhutanese students to study in prestigious institutions of higher learning and offered help in setting up a digital library in Bhutan. The prestigious Nehru-Wangchuk Scholarship is being awarded to deserving and talented Bhutanese nationals to undertake studies in selected premier Indian educational institutions. The hydel power sector represents one of the main indicators of bilateral co-operation between India and Bhutan. So far, Government of India has constructed three hydroelectric projects in Bhutan (Chukha, Kurichchu and Tala). India has helped Bhutan in developing that country's infrastructure by establishing telecommunication and in the construction of hospitals, roads and bridges.

Gur Padmasambhava, a Buddhist saint who went to Bhutan from India, played an influential role in spreading Buddhism and cementing traditional ties between people of both nations.

India and China

In terms of geographic and demographic dimension, skilled manpower and civilisational depth, China is the only country in the region which qualifies for comparison with India. China, being the manufacturing hub of the world, is strategically very important to India. India and China share similarity of view on many fronts like World Trade Organisation, international climate change talks and reforms of the World Bank. Shanghai Cooperation Organisation, which was China's initiative, has granted the observer status to India, while SAARC had granted the observer status to China. Both sides have established more dialogue mechanisms covering diverse sectors. Bilateral trade has registered enormous growth. India and China have signed an educational exchange programme. Under this agreement, scholarships are awarded to 25 students, by both sides, in recognised institutions of higher learning in each other's country.

McMahon Line: This is the boundary line between India and China, east of Bhutan. It was determined 1914 at a conference of representatives of British India, Tibet and China. The Secretary of State for India (in British Cabinet), Arthur Henry McMahon, represented British India at the Conference.

India and Maldives

Maldives is located south of Lakshadweep Islands in the Indian Ocean. The relationship with Maldives is important for India given its strategic location and geographical proximity. India and Maldives share ethnic, linguistic, cultural, religious and commercial links steeped in antiquity and enjoy cordial and multi-dimensional relations. Trade and

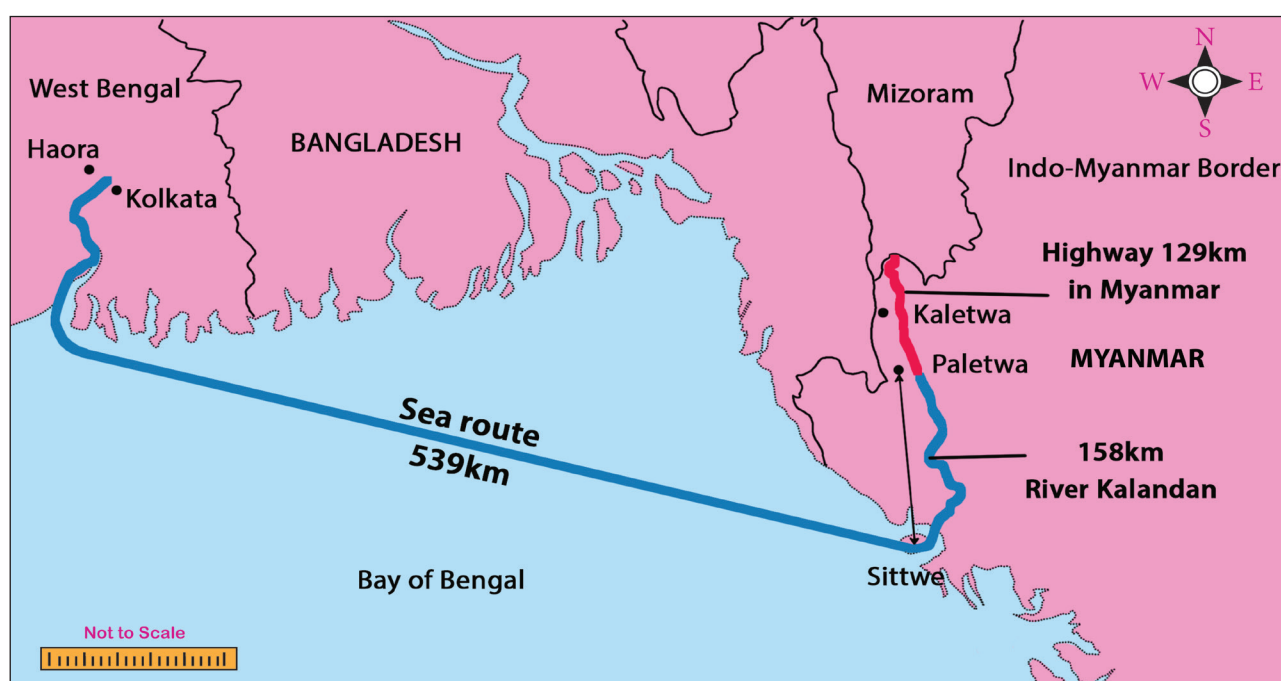
tourism are being developed between the two countries. Both countries have agreed to strengthen cooperation to enhance maritime security in the Indian Ocean Region through coordinated patrolling and aerial surveillance and exchange of information.

India and Myanmar

India's second largest border is shared with Myanmar (known as Burma till 1989). Four North-Eastern Indian states – Arunachala Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur and Mizoram – also share their borders with Myanmar. Myanmar is India's gateway to South East Asia. India is building the Kaladan Multi-Model Transit Transport, a road-river-port cargo transport project to link Kolkata to Sittwe in Myanmar. A project aiming to connect Kolkata with Ho Chi Minh City on the South Sea for the formation of an economic zone will have a road pass through Myanmar, Cambodia and Vietnam and work on the first phase connecting Guwahati with Mandalay is currently underway. Myanmar is an important partner in our energy needs for petroleum and natural gas. Some of the Indian companies such as Essar, GAIL and ONGC Videsh Ltd. have invested in Myanmar's energy sector.

India and Nepal

Nepal is a natural buffer between India and China. Being a small landlocked country, Nepal depends on India for economic support and transit facilities. India shares borders in five Indian states – Sikkim, West Bengal, Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and Uttarakhand – with Nepal. People residing in the border districts on both sides share deeper cultural bonds. Indian firms are the biggest investors in Nepal. India provides substantial financial and technical development assistance with the focus on infrastructure, irrigation, health, energy projects and community development. India built the 204-kilometre long Mahendra Raj Marg to link Kathmandu and India. Nepal is endowed with fast-flowing rivers and its terrain is ideal for hydroelectric power generation. India has taken up the work of 5600 MW Pancheshwar project, which remained stalled for 18 years after agreement. Nepali and Indian people visit each other's country for religious pilgrimage. Pashupati and Janakpur are traditional centres in Nepal whereas Varanasi and the four Dhaams (Badrinath, Puri, Dwaraka and Rameshwaram) are important pilgrimage destinations in India. The bond of friendship



further increased when India included Nepalese language in the VIII schedule of the Constitution. A joint hydropower project is being built on the Sharda River. This power plant helps both India and Nepal with respect to electricity production and irrigation facilities. From the environmental perspective, there are a number of tiger reserves along Indo-Nepal border. The governments of India and Nepal have signed three sister-city agreements for twinning of Kathmandu-Varanasi, Lumbini-Bodhgaya and Janakpur-Ayodhya.



India and Pakistan



Since the bifurcation of territory, which demarcated India and Pakistan in 1947, the two nations have had strained relations due to disagreements over a number of key issues. Terrorism remains our core concern in the relationship with Pakistan. Pakistan has been antagonistic when maintaining relations with India. But India has made extreme efforts to improve and stabilise relations with Pakistan. The cross-border firing between India and Pakistan and the terrorist

LoC (Line of Control) The Ceasefire line determined in 1949 was called the LoC after 1972. This is the boundary that came to be agreed between India and Pakistan under the Shimla Agreement of 1972. It was called Radcliffe Line at the time of partition in 1947, (Radcliffe was the chairman of the border commission.) This is now called LoC.

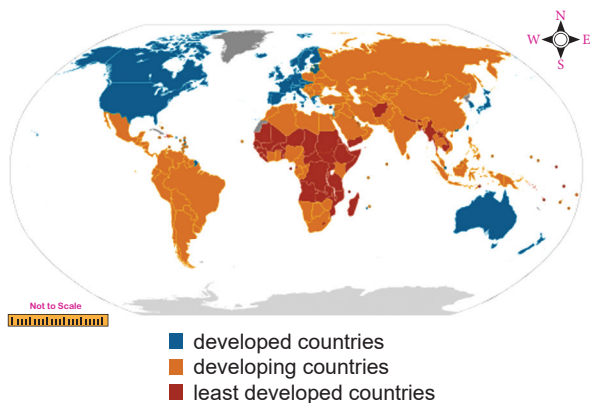
attacks combined have taken its toll on the Kashmiris, who have suffered poor living standards and an erosion of human rights. Kashmir is the bone of contention between India and Pakistan, which has brought the two countries into an open clash many times. Cross-border terrorism is a major irritant. India tried to bring a positive change in the relationship of the two countries through bilateral agreements such as Shimla Agreement and Lahore Declaration.

India and Sri Lanka



India has cultural, historical and religious ties with Sri Lanka. Separated by the narrow expanse of the Palk Strait, India and Sri Lanka have shared excellent trade relations committing to each other in both bilateral free trade agreements as well as developing interactions through SAARC. The relationship between India and Sri Lanka can generally be termed as friendly, except for the brief spell in which the Tamil ethnic problem cast its shadow on the relations between the two countries. India and Sri Lanka has conventionally close to each other. India is among the top investors in Sri Lanka and its investments are in diverse areas including petroleum retail, IT, real estate, telecommunication and tourism. On the other hand, the Sri Lankan investments in India include Brandix (garment city in Vishakhapatnam), MAS Holdings, John Keels, Hayleys, apart from the other investments in the freight servicing and logistic sector. India offers scholarship slots annually to deserving Sri Lankan students. Sri Lanka is also a partner in Nalanda University Project of India.

Ashoka had sent his son Mahinda and daughter Sangamitra to Ceylon (Sri Lanka) for the propagation of Buddhism. Chola kings Rajaraja I and Rajendra I conquered the northern part of Ceylon.



5.2 India's Relationships with Developed Countries

A developed country is a sovereign state that has a highly developed economy and advanced technological infrastructure relative to other less industrialised nations.

India has been balancing the superpowers with great care and had been trying to reap the maximum benefit for its domestic development.

a. USA

India and the United States of America has signed a Communications Compatibility and Security Agreement (COMCASA) that will lead to a new generation of bilateral military partnership. It is valid for a period of 10 years. COMCASA gives India access to advanced communication technology used in U.S. defence equipment and allows real-time information sharing between the militaries of the two countries.

b. European countries

There has been a significant progress in all areas particularly the growing cooperation and exchanges include defence, counter-terrorism, nuclear energy and space. French space launch pads are used by ISRO. India and France are cooperating on developing smart cities Chandigarh, Nagpur and Puducherry. India and France launched the International Solar Alliance, which brings together countries between Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn for cooperation on solar energy.

c. Australia

India and Australia have built strategic trust over the years slowly yet steadily. Australia and India are committed to working together to enhance maritime co-operation with India's bilateral naval exercise (AUSINDEX). The Australia India Council broadens the relationship between Australia and India raising awareness and promoting exchanges.

d. Japan

India decided to introduce the Japan's Shinkansen system. It is a highest class of high-speed railway system with safety and accuracy. Delhi Metro is one of the most successful examples of Japanese co-operation. Mumbai-Ahmedabad High Speed Railway (MAHSR) is another area of co-operation. The Government of Japan has offered 20 seats per year to Indian nationals for a master's degree course in the University of Japan for serving the Indian Railways.

In the manufacturing sector Japan announced its co-operation of training 30,000 Indian people in the Japan India Institute of Manufacturing (JIM) providing Japanese style manufacturing skills to enhance India's manufacturing industry base and contribute to 'Make in India' and 'Skill India' initiatives.

In 2017, the first four JIMs were started in the states of Gujarat, Karnataka, Rajasthan and Tamil Nadu and JEC (two Japanese Endowed Courses in engineering colleges) was established in Andhra Pradesh.

Recent initiatives include the establishment of three India-Japan Joint Laboratories in the area of information and communication technology (Internet of Things, Artificial Intelligence and Big Data Analytics).

5.3 India and West Asia

West Asia includes Egypt, the Arabian Peninsula, Turkey and Iran. India and West Asia enjoy pre-historical ties. Trade relations were established between the civilisations of Mesopotamia and the Indus Valley.



West Asia stands as a region of considerable significance for India, economically as well as strategically. West Asia is gateway to landlocked and energy-rich Central Asia. With the advent of the new millennium, there has been extraordinary turnaround in the relationship between the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) countries and India.

A trilateral agreement called the Chabahar Agreement was signed between India, Afghanistan and Iran, which has led to the establishment of transit and transport corridor among three countries using Chabahar port. This port is seen as golden gateway for India to access landlocked markets of Afghanistan and Central Asia bypassing Pakistan.

One of the oldest maritime trading routes ran from ancient Sumeria via Bahrain to the Indus Civilisation called Meluha.

In medieval times, comments a noted scholar M.S. Agwani, "the Indian expertise in medicine, mathematics and astronomy was

highly valued by Arab and Iranian scholars who eventually made it part of their own intellectual traditions."

5.4 India and International Organisations

India is a potential superpower and has a growing international influence all around the world. Being a newly industrialised country, India has a great history of collaboration with several countries. It has acted as prominent member of several international organisations and has been a founding member of some. India is a member of formal groupings like UNO, NAM, SAARC, G20 and the Commonwealth.

India has been extending a helping hand to the UNO, in all her efforts in ending military conflicts, and in promoting peace and progress among the nations.

BRICS

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa are leading emerging economies and political powers at the regional and

India is actively engaged in general economic diplomacy, which is evident in the country being part of several economic coalitions, as listed in the table below.

Name of the global groupings	Name of the member countries	Objectives
IBSA	India, Brazil, South Africa	To focus on agriculture, education, energy, trade, culture and defence among others
BCIM	Bangladesh, China, India, Myanmar	To respond to threats such as natural disasters and data breaches and protect business interests
MGC (Mekong Ganga cooperation)	India, Cambodia, Laos, PDR Myanmar, Thailand, Vietnam	To create necessary infrastructural facilities in the Ganga-Mekong basin
BIMSTEC (Bay of Bengal Initiative for Multi-Sectoral Technical and Economic Cooperation)	Bangladesh, India, Myanmar, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Bhutan and Nepal	To strengthen and improve the technological economic cooperation, international trade and foreign direct investment cooperation
RCEP (Regional Comprehensive Economic Partnership)	Australia, Brunei, Cambodia, China, India, Indonesia, Japan, Korea, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, New Zealand, Philippines, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam	To achieve modern high-quality and mutually beneficial agreement that covers trade in goods, trade in service, investments, technical cooperation dispute settlement and other issues
EAS (East Asia Summit)	10 ASEAN nations + 8 strategic partners including US, China, India, Japan	To promote peace and stability
GCC Gulf Cooperation Council	Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates, India	To achieve unity based on their common objectives and their similar political and cultural identities
BBIN	Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Nepal	For energy development
SCO (Shanghai cooperation organization)	India, Kazakhstan, China, Kyrgyzstan, Pakistan, Russia, Tajikistan and Uzbekistan	For security-related concerns, resolving border issues, intelligence sharing and countering terrorism



international level. The BRICS organisation's headquarters is in Shanghai, China. BRICS opened up a possibility for countries of the Global South to challenge the Global North. India is an active member and this collaboration paves way for India to build its global profile.

Reason for the formation of BRICS

To be an alternative to World Bank and IMF to challenge U.S. supremacy

To provide self-owned and self-managed organisations to carry out developmental and economical plans in its member nations

Objectives of BRICS

- ◆ To achieve regional development
- ◆ It acts as a bridge between developed and developing countries

The acronym BRICS was coined by Jim O'Neill, a famous British economist. He predicted that by year 2050 Brazil, Russia, India and China would become bigger than the six most industrialised nations in dollar terms and would completely change the power dynamics of the last 300 years.

- ◆ To contribute extensively to development of humanity
- ◆ To establish a more equitable and fair world
- ◆ Boost intra BRICS trade in their local currencies to increase trade cooperation and cope with the current international financial crisis
- ◆ To promote the technological information exchange among the member states
- ◆ To enhance inclusive economic growth that will lead to an increase in the creation of jobs, fight against poverty and accelerate the economic transformation of members.

The financial architecture of BRICS

The New Development Bank (NDB) is a multilateral development bank. Its primary focus is lending for infrastructure projects. It aims to contribute to development plans established nationally through projects that are socially, environmentally and economically sustainable. It gives priority to projects aimed at developing renewable energy sources.

The Contingent Reserve Arrangement (CRA) is a framework for providing protection against global liquidity pressures, which includes currency issues.

BRICS payment system

At the 2015 BRICS Summit, ministers from the BRICS nations initiated consultations a payment system that would be an alternative to the Society for Worldwide Interbank Financial Telecommunication (SWIFT) system.

The factors that bolster co-operation among members

First, the common need among developing countries to construct an economic order that reflects the current situation will drive the BRICS efforts. In this matter, the idea of NDB and CRA are defining changes and will have huge geo-economic and geopolitical impact.

Second, the BRICS alternative idea in the landscape of global governance will attract support from other countries.

Third, the expansion of BRICS interaction to other sector will make it more strong partnership.

OPEC

OPEC, the Organisation of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (a group of oil-producing nations), is an intergovernmental organisation founded in Baghdad, Iraq, and headquartered in Vienna, Austria. Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and Venezuela are the OPEC's Founder Members.

There are three categories of memberships: Founder Members, Full Members and Associate Members. At present there are 15 member nations (two are located in South America, six in the Middle East and seven in Africa). OPEC membership is open to any country that exports crude oil and which shares the ideals of the organisation.

The OPEC LOGO



It is the result of an international design competition held in 1969. An Austrian designer Svoboda won the competition with her design, which combined the different letters of the organisation's name in a rounded design.

OPEC's mission

- ◆ To coordinate oil policies in its member countries
- ◆ Help stabilise oil markets
- ◆ To secure fair and stable income to petroleum producers
- ◆ An efficient, economic and regular supply of oil to consuming nations
- ◆ A fair return on capital to those investing in the petroleum industry

How does OPEC help other countries?

The OPEC Fund for International Development (OPID) is an institution that helps finance projects with low interest loans. It also provides grants to social and humanitarian projects.

OPEC has an Information Centre with over 20,000 volumes including books, reports, maps and conference proceedings related to petroleum, energy and the oil market. The Information Centre is open to the public and is often used by researchers and students.

India's relationship with OPEC

India is one of the biggest consumers of crude oil. OPEC obviously has vested interest in India's economic growth. We import 86% of crude oil, 70% natural gas, 95% of cooking gas from OPEC countries. India has been identified as a great partner for OPEC mainly because of its high oil demand.

India doesn't have enough oil reserves. India can't produce oil. Devoid of necessary oil reserves India strongly focuses on agriculture, and industrial production.

Conclusion

Apart from economic and trade cooperation, India also aspires to have

a warm relationship with its neighbours and extended neighbours in the field of education, health, fighting terrorism, disaster management, employment for its citizens, curbing organised crimes, technology development and so on.

SUMMARY

- India has always been known as a peace – loving country and has strived hard to champion the cause of peace in the world.
- India has cordial, historical, religious, economic, ethnic and linguistic relationship with all its neighbouring countries.
- India supports its neighbours to improve public health, small scale industries, tele communication, education and in the construction of roads and bridges,
- Government of India provides grant assistance for the construction of buildings, laboratories, dispensaries and deep tube wells to its neighbours.
- India is contributing proactively to the development of its neighbours in the form of monetary aids and funds.
- India has good relationship with the superpowers and tries to reap the maximum benefit for its domestic development.
- India extend it support to the UNO in all her efforts.
- India is an active member of BRICS and it paves way for India to build its global profile.

GLOSSARY

homogenous	of the same kind/alike	ஒரினத்தைச் சேர்ந்த
bilateral trade	trading between two countries	இருதரப்பு வர்த்தகம்
hydroelectric project	producing electricity by using the power of fast moving water	நீர் மின்சார திட்டம்
infrastructure	the basis organisational facilities	உள்கட்டமைப்பு
antiquity	the ancient past	தொன்மை
bifurcation	to divide into two parts	இரண்டாகப் பிரித்தல்
surveillance	Close observation	கண்காணிப்பு



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

- Mc Mahon Line is a border between
 - Burma and India
 - India and Nepal
 - India and China
 - India and Bhutan
- India is not a member of which of the following
 - G20
 - ASEAN
 - SAARC
 - BRICS
 Select the correct option
 - 4 only
 - 2 and 4
 - 2, 4 and 1
 - 1, 2 and 3
- OPEC is
 - An international insurance Co.
 - An international sports club
 - An Organisation of Oil Exporting Countries
 - An international company
- With which country does India share its longest land border?
 - Bangladesh
 - Myanmar
 - Afghanistan
 - China
- Match the following and choose the correct answer form the codes given below.

i) Salma Dam	- 1. Bangladesh
ii) Farakka accord	- 2. Nepal
iii) Chukha hydroelectric project	- 3. Afghanistan
iv) Sharda River project	- 4. Bhutan

 - 3 1 4 2
 - 3 1 2 4
 - 3 4 1 2
 - 4 3 2 1

- How many countries share its border with India?
 - 5
 - 6
 - 7
 - 8
- Which two island countries are India's neighbours?
 - Sri Lanka and Andaman island
 - Maldieves and Lakshadweep island
 - Maldieves and Nicobar island
 - Sri Lanka and Maldieves
- Which Indian state is surrounded by three countries?
 - Arunachal Pradesh
 - Meghalaya
 - Mizoram
 - Sikkim
- How many Indian states have their boundary with Nepal?
 - Five
 - Four
 - Three
 - Two
- Who drew up the borders for newly independent Pakistan?
 - Lord Mountbatten
 - Sir Cyril Radcliffe
 - Clement Atlee
 - None of the above.

II. Fill in the blanks

- _____ is a small Himalayan kingdom.
- India's gateway to South East Asia is _____.
- _____ is a buffer country between India and China.
- A strip of land _____, belongs to India on West Bengal and Bangladesh border.
- _____ is known as the Land of thunderbolt.
- India and Sri Lanka are separated by _____.



III. Consider the following statement and tick the appropriate answer

1. The Kaladan transport project by India and Myanmar consists of which of the following modes of transport?

1. Roads 2. Railways
3. Shipping 4. Inland water transport

Select the correct answer using the codes given below

- a) 1, 2 and 3 only
b) 1, 3 and 4 only
c) 2, 3 and 4 only
d) 1, 2, 3 and 4

2. **Assertion (A):** India and France launched International Solar Alliance.

Reason (R): It was done to bring together countries between Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn for co-operation of solar energy.

- a) A is correct and R is the correct explanation of A
b) A is correct and R is not the correct explanation of A
c) A is wrong and R is correct
d) Both are wrong

3. Which of the following statements are true?

Statement 1. ICCR has initiated a Tagore Chair in University of Dhaka.

Statement 2. Myanmar is India's gateway to western countries.

Statement 3. Nepal and Bhutan are land locked nations.

Statement 4. Sri Lanka is one of the partner in Nalanda University Project of India.

- a) 1, 2 and 3
b) 2, 3 and 4
c) 1, 3 and 4
d) 1, 2 and 4

4. **Assertion (A):** OPEC has vested interest in India's economic growth.

Reason (R): Devoid of necessary oil resources India strongly focuses on agriculture and industrial production.

- a) A is correct and R explains A
b) A is wrong and R is correct
c) Both are correct
d) Both are wrong

IV. Match the following

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Brandix | - Vienna |
| 2. COMCASA | - Japan |
| 3. Shinkansen system | - Shanghai |
| 4. BRICS | - USA |
| 5. OPEC | - Garment city in Vishakapatnam |

V. Give short answers

1. Name the neighbouring countries of India.
2. Write a short note on Strategic partnership Agreement (SPA).
3. Mention the member countries of BRICS.
4. What do you know about Kaladan Multi – Model Transit Transport?
5. How do you assess the importance of Chabahar agreement?
6. List out any five global groupings in which India is a member.
7. What is the role of Japan India Institute of Manufacturing (JIM)?

VI. Answer in detail

1. Highlight India and International organisation with special reference to any three India's global groupings.
2. Trace the reason for the formation of BRICS and write its objectives.
3. Mention OPEC missions and how does it help other countries?

VII. Project and activity

1. Students can be asked to collect information from newspapers about India's relation with world countries.
2. Group project involving students to prepare an album with pictures on India's latest projects with its neighboring countries.



REFERENCE BOOKS

1. V.K. Malhotra, *International Relations*, Calcutta: Anmol publication
2. Prakash Chandra, *International Relations* New Delhi: Vikas Publishing
3. Prakash Chandra, *Theories of International Relations*: Aman publishing
4. Baldev Raj Nayar and Thazha Varkey Paul, *India in the world order: Searching for major-power status*, Cambridge University Press (2003)
5. Deep Datta Ray, *The making of modern Indian Diplomacy; A critique of Eurocentrism*, Oxford University Press, India (2015)
6. Jon C.W. Pevehouse, Joshna S. Goldstein, *International Relations*, Pearson Education, Noida (2017)
7. Rajendra M. Abhyankar, *Indian Diplomacy*, Oxford University Press, India (2018)



ECONOMICS



Unit - 3

Food Security and Nutrition



Learning Objectives

- To study about the meaning, definition of food security
- To know about the availability and access to food grains
- To understand about the purchasing power and agricultural policy
- To gain knowledge about the multi-dimensional nature of poverty
- To study about nutrition and health status and policies in Tamil Nadu



Introduction

Food is defined as any substance that people eat and drink to maintain life and growth. Food security would denote a person's ability to eat enough, stay active and lead a healthy life.

3.1 Food Security

The United Nation's Food and Agriculture Organisation defines food security as follows:

“Food security exists when all people, at all times, have physical, social and economic access to sufficient, safe and nutritious food which meets their dietary needs and food preferences for an active and healthy life.” (FAO, 2009)

While this comprehensive definition highlights the need for food to be nutritious, in addition to that there are certain other aspects that are required to achieve nutrition security. According to eminent agricultural scientist M.S.Swaminathan, nutrition security is:

“physical, economic and social access to a balanced diet, safe drinking water,

environmental hygiene, primary health care and primary education”.

The concept of food security has continuously evolved over the last five decades or so. Initially it referred to the overall food supply for a global, regional or national context. From this idea of food security, which means food supply/food production that addressed the overall adequacy, it became clear that the term had to be relevant at the community, household and individual level.

3.1.1. Basic components of food and nutrition security

The term was broadened to include the three basic components of food and nutrition security. They are availability, access and absorption:

1. **Availability of food** is physical availability of food stocks in desired quantities, which is a function of domestic production, changes in stocks and imports;

2. **Access to food** is primarily a matter of purchasing power and is therefore closely linked with the capabilities and employment opportunities to earn. Capabilities and opportunities in turn are related to one's access to assets and education.
3. **Absorption** of food is the ability to biologically utilise the food consumed. Several factors such as nutrition, knowledge and practices, safe and hygienic environmental conditions allow for effective biological absorption of food and health status.

3.2 Availability and Access to Food Grains

Thus food security for people in a country is not only dependent on the quantum of food available but also on the ability of people to purchase/access food and to stay in appropriate healthy environment. Just as other developmental issues, food security of people is also related to a country's overall development process. After Independence, India chose to adopt a planned developmental model.



Food Grains

After an initial focus on agriculture, industrialisation was given priority. The recurrent droughts experienced by India pushed her to be dependent on imports of food grains. However, the available foreign exchange reserve could not permit open market purchases and import of grains. India had to plead for food grains from richer countries at concessional rates. United States

of America extended assistance through its Public Law 480 (PL 480) scheme to India during early 1960s. This situation was popularly known as 'Ship to Mouth' existence.

A country with a massive population growing hungry was perceived to be a potential candidate for revolution. The American administration and philanthropic organisations like Ford Foundation formulated a plan to increase food production in the country by introducing High Yielding Varieties (HYV) of wheat and rice. This programme was implemented in select districts where irrigation was assured. The results were promising and the programme was extended to cover a larger number of districts.

Thus, Green Revolution was born in the country paving way for self-sufficiency in food grain production. Increased food grain production was made possible by an increase area cultivated with HYV of rice and wheat as also an increase in the yield of these major cereal crops. Area under food grains was a little more than 98 million hectares during early 1950s. The country was producing just 54 million tonnes of food grains then with an average yield of food grains of 547 kg per hectare. The food situation has steadily improved over a period of 65 years. Area under foodgrain cultivation has grown to 122 million hectares, with an increase of five-fold increase in food grain production. Yield of food grains has increased four-fold between the time of independence and at present. (see Table 1)

This growth in food grain production was made possible by the HYV programme, which was implemented as a package. Apart from introducing fertiliser-responsive high-yielding varieties of rice and wheat, it ensured the availability of subsidised chemical fertilisers for the farmers. Cheaper farm credit was disbursed to farmers through co-operative banks and societies. Minimum support price (MSP) for the crops were announced at the



Table 1: Area, Production and Yield of Foodgrain in India from 1951-52 to 2017-18

Triennium average centered around	Area (Million ha)	Production (Million tonnes)	Yield (Kg/ha)
1951-52	98.79	54.00	546.65
1971-72	122.07	103.54	848.18
1991-92	124.29	174.75	1406.02
2013-14	122.63	258.27	2106.00
2017-18	126.98	279.51	2201.00

Source: Agricultural Statistics at a Glance, 2018; Economic Survey, 2017-18.

beginning of the season and the state procured the harvested grains through the Food Corporation of India (FCI). The FCI had built huge storage godowns and built buffer stocks of food grain during the harvest season to be distributed all through the year.

Minimum Support Price

Minimum Support Price is a price fixed by an expert group for a particular crop by considering various costs involved in the cultivation of that crop. After announcing the MSP, the State will open procurement centres in places where these crops are widely grown. However, the farmers are free to sell in the open market if they get a better price for their crop produce. On the other hand, if the open market price is lower than the MSP, the farmers would get an assured price (the MSP) by selling their produce to the FCI. Thus, with the implementation of MSP farmers are certain about the price they would get at the end of the crop season. Further, farmers also get insulated against any price crash during the harvest season.

The rapid increase in food grain production was accompanied by appropriate technological interventions in the dairy, poultry and fisheries sectors. As a result, the milk production in the country witnessed an eight-fold increase, egg production grew 40-fold and fish production by 13-fold between the time of Independence and mid-2000s.

However, India could not succeed in attaining self-sufficiency in the production of pulses and oil seeds. Therefore, India depends on imports to meet the requirements of people.

3.2.1. Public Distribution System

The increase in food grain production need not result in increase in access to food for all. Given the unequal distribution of income and the level of poverty that persists in Indian economy, the government took steps to distribute food grains at subsidised rates through the Public Distribution System (PDS). The nature, scope and functioning of PDS varies from state to state.



Public Distribution System

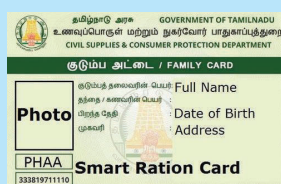
While Tamil Nadu has adopted an 'Universal' PDS, the rest of the states in India had a 'Targeted' PDS. Under universal PDS all the family ration card holders are entitled to the supplies from PDS. In the targeted PDS, the beneficiaries are identified based on certain criteria and given their entitlements, leaving

out the rest. Both the Union and the State governments subsidised the supplies distributed through PDS. The level and quantum of subsidy also varied across states.

Subsequently, the National Food Security Act (NFSA) was passed by the Indian parliament in 2013. The NFSA covers 50% of urban households and 75% of the rural households. These households are known as priority households identified based on a set of criteria. Priority households of this country now have the right to food supplied through PDS. The Union government supplies rice at the rate of ₹ 3 per kg, wheat at the rate of ₹ 2 per kg, and millets at the rate of ₹ 1 per kg under NFSA. Tamil Nadu continues to have the universal system of PDS and supplies rice at free of cost to all card holders.

Bio Metric Smart Family Cards

The Government of Tamil Nadu has declared that SMART family cards will be issued in lieu of existing family cards. It has also been mentioned that the Director of Census Operations under the National Population Registry is conducting bio-metric capturing of 10 fingerprints, two iris and face scan of citizens to issue Unique Identification Number. After completion of this process of bio-metric capturing, it has been proposed to adopt this data to issue bio-metric SMART family cards. The advantage is that since it is based on unique identity, the data duplication of members and bogus cards can be eliminated.



National Food Security Act in Tamil Nadu

On 1 November 2016, Tamil Nadu became the last state in the country to implement the National Food Security Act after holding out for three years. In a government order issued on 27 October, the state specified that while it was enforcing the law, it would be modifying its provisions.

3.2.2. Role of Consumer Cooperatives in Food Security

Consumer cooperatives play an important role in the supply of quality goods at responsible rates to common people.



Co-operative Society

There is a three-tier structure of consumer cooperative societies in India. They are primary consumer cooperative societies. Central consumer cooperative stores and state level consumer federations. More than 50,000 village level societies are engaged in the distribution of consumer goods in rural areas. There are many benefits to consumer cooperatives such as health care, insurance, housing etc.. This scheme is playing an important role in food security in India. For example out of all fair

Buffer Stock

Buffer stock is the stock of food grains, namely wheat and rice, procured by the government through the Food



Buffer Stock

Corporation of India (FCI). The FCI purchases wheat and rice from the farmers in states where there is surplus production. The farmers are paid a pre-announced price for their crops. This price is called Minimum Support Price (MSP). The MSP is declared by the government every year before the sowing season to provide incentives to farmers for raising the production of these crops. The purchased foodgrains are stored in granaries.

Buffer stock is done to distribute foodgrains in the deficit areas and among the poorer strata of the society at a price lower than the market price also known as the Issue Price. This also helps resolve the problem of shortage of food during adverse weather conditions or during the periods of calamity.

price shops running in Tamil Nadu, around 94% are being run by cooperatives.

Fair Price Shops

At present, 33,222 Fair Price Shops are serving 1.98 crore families. Out of 33,222 Fair Price shops, 31,232 are run by the cooperative societies, 1,394 are run by the Tamil Nadu Civil Supplies Corporation and 596 are run by women self-help groups. To improve accessibility to PDS, it is necessary that they are located in close proximity to habitations. Accordingly, it has been proposed to open new fair price shops so that, no card holder walks more than 1.5 km.

3.3 Purchasing Power

Purchasing power is the value of a currency expressed in terms of the amount of goods or services that one unit of money can buy. Price increases purchasing power declines and vice versa.

3.3.1. Factors affecting Purchasing Power

1. Over population

The population growth rate in India is high as 1.7 per 1000. Large population leads to increasing demand, but supply was not equal to the demand. So, the normal price level will be going an higher. So it affect purchasing power, especially in rural population.



Population

2. Increasing prices of essential goods

Even though there has been a constant growth in the GDP and growth opportunities in the Indian economy, there have been steady increase in the prices of essential goods. The continuous rise in the prices erodes the purchasing power and adversely affect the poor people. During 2015–16 an average rate of 2% flood inflation, the prices of pulses rose by about 40%.

3. Demand for goods

When demand for goods increases, the price of goods increases then the purchasing power is affected.

4. Price of goods affect the value of currency

When the price increases the purchasing power decreases and finally the value of currency decreases and vice versa.

5. Production and supply of goods

The production and supply of goods decline, the price of goods increases, then the purchasing power is affected.

6. Poverty and inequality

There exists a huge economic disparity in the Indian economy. The proportion of income and assets owned by top 10% of Indian



Inequality

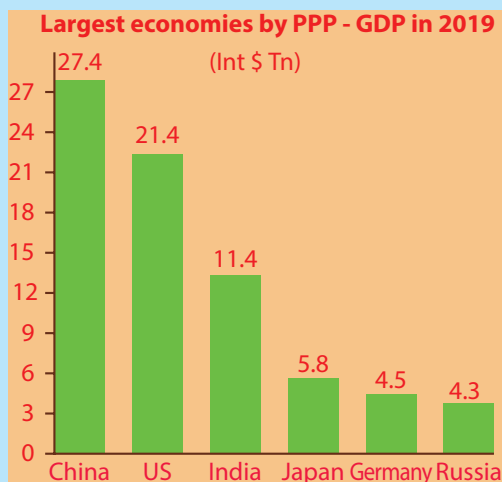
goes on increasing. This has led to an increase in the poverty level in the society. Generally purchasing power is affected by poverty and unequal distribution of wealth also.

Purchasing power affects every aspect of economics, from consumers buying goods to investors and stock prices to a country's economic prosperity. As such, a country's government institutes policies and regulations to protect a currency's purchasing power and keep an economy healthy. One method to monitor purchasing power is through the Consumer Price Index.

Purchasing Power Parity (PPP)

A concept related to purchasing power is purchasing price parity (PPP). PPP is an economic theory that estimates the amount that needs to be adjusted to the price of an item, given exchange rates of the two countries, in order for the exchange to match each currency's purchasing power.

PPP can be used to compare countries income levels and other relevant economic data concerning the cost of living, or possible rates of inflation and deflation. Recently, India became the third largest economy in terms of PPP. China became the largest economy, pushing the US to the second position.



3.4 Agricultural Policy in India

The new agricultural policy based on export of agricultural goods was announced by the Central government in 2018. This policy states that the government has decided to remove export restrictions on most organic and processed agricultural products.

The main reason is to give an assurance that organic or processed agricultural products will not be under any export restrictions such as export duty, export bans and quota restriction.

Agricultural policy of a country is mostly designed by the Government for raising agricultural production and productivity and also for raising the level of income and standard

of living of farmers within a definite time frame. This policy is formulated for allround and comprehensive development of the agricultural sector.

The following are some of the important objectives of india's agricultural policy

1. Raising the productivity of inputs

One of the important objectives of India's agricultural policy is to improve the productivity of inputs so purchased like, HYV seeds, fertilisers, pesticides, irrigation projects etc.

2. Raising value-added per hectare

Agricultural policy is to increase per hectare value-added rather than raising physical output by raising the productivity of agriculture in general and productivity of small and marginal holding in particular.

3. Protecting the interests of poor farmers

Agricultural policy is proposed to protect the interests of poor and marginal farmers by abolishing intermediaries through land reforms, expanding institutional credit support to poor farmers etc.

4. Modernising agricultural sector

Here the policy support includes the introduction of modern technology in agricultural operations and application of improved agricultural inputs like HYV seeds, fertilizers etc.



5. Environmental degradation

Agricultural policy of India has set another objective to check environmental degradation of natural base of Indian agriculture.

6. Removing bureaucratic obstacles

The policy has set another objective to remove bureaucratic obstacles on the farmers' co-operative societies and self-help institutions so that they can work independently.

3.5 Multi-dimensional Nature of Poverty

Multi-dimensional poverty measures can be used to create a more comprehensive picture. They reveal who is poor, how they are poor and the range of disadvantages they experience. As well as providing a headline measure of poverty, multi-dimensional measures can be broken down to reveal the poverty level in different areas of a country, and among different sub-groups of people.

The Multi-dimensional Poverty Index (MPI) was launched by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) and the Oxford Poverty Human Development Initiative (OPHI) in 2010. The basic philosophy and significance of MPI is that it is based on the idea that poverty is not unidimensional, and that it is rather multi-dimensional.

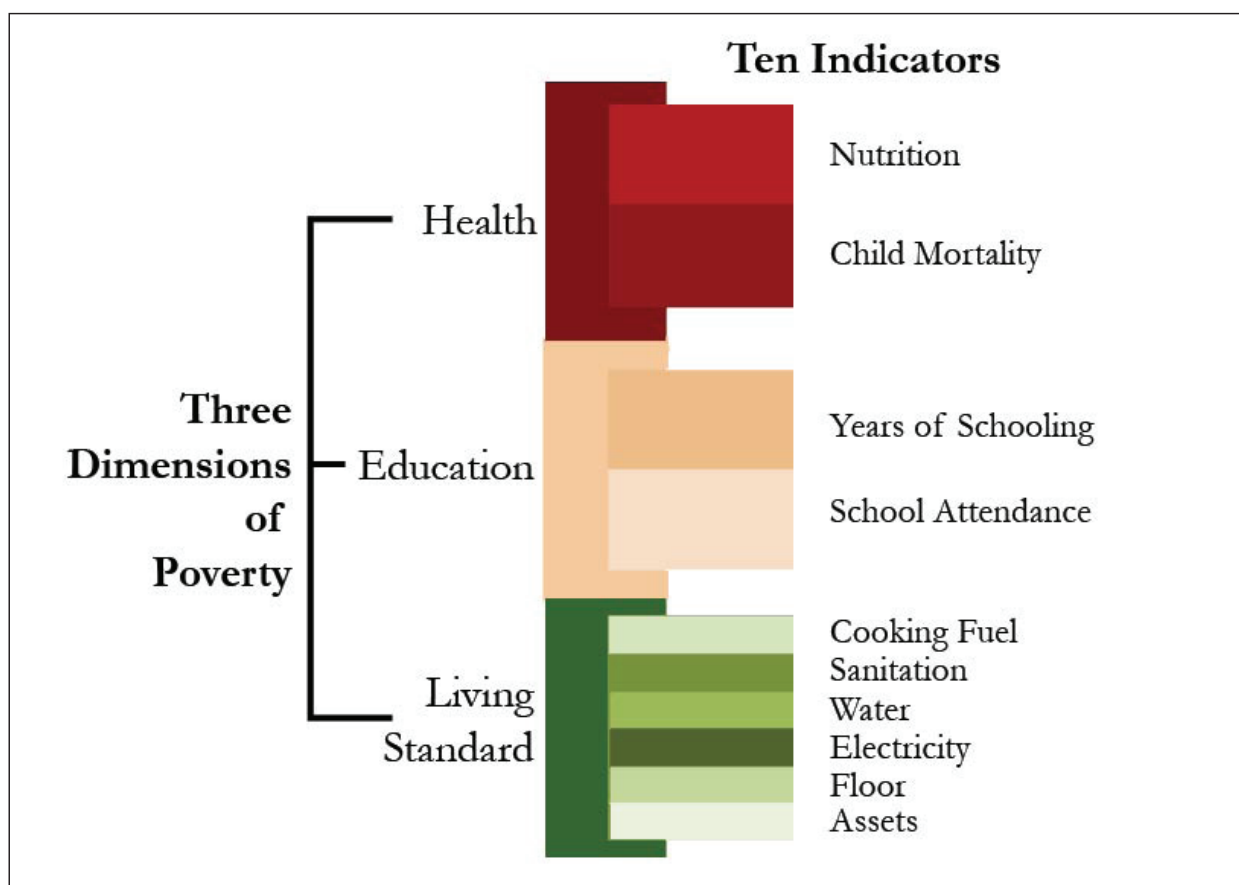
Multi-dimensional poverty is made up of several factors that constitute poor people's experience of deprivation such as health, education,

living standards, income, disempowerment, quality of work and threat from violence.

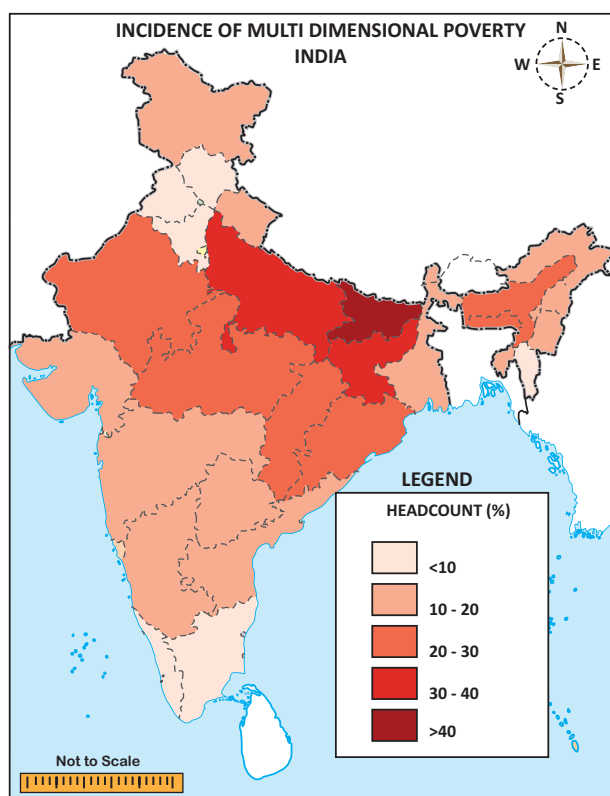
3.5.1. Multi-dimensional Poverty Index 2018 in India

Multi-dimensional Poverty Index 2018 report prepared by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) and the Oxford Poverty and Human Development Initiative makes the following observations about India.

1. India has reduced its poverty rate drastically from 55% to 28% in 10 years, with 271 million people moving out of poverty between 2005-06 and 2015-16.
2. India still had 364 million poor people in 2015-16, the largest for any country, although it is down from 635 million in 2005-06.
3. Of the 364 million people who were MPI poor in 2015-16, 156 million were children whereas in 2005-06 there were 292 million



Multi-Dimensional Poverty Index - Ten Indicators



poor children in India. This represents a 47% decrease or 136 million fewer children growing up in multi-dimensional poverty.

- 80% of people belonging to ST were poor in 2005-06 and 50% of them were still poor in 2015-16.
- Bihar with more than half its population in poverty was the poorest state in 2015-16.
- The four poorest states Bihar, Jharkhand, Uttar Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh were still home to 196 million MPI poor people, which was over half of all the MPI poor people in India.
- Kerala, one of the least poor regions in 2006, reduced its MPI by around 92%.

3.5.2. Multi-dimensional Poverty Index 2018 Report in Tamil Nadu

Over the last decades, Tamil Nadu has made a significant progress in poverty reduction. The districts in Tamil Nadu are classified into three categories, namely high-poverty districts (more than 40% of the population living below poverty line), moderately poor districts (30% to 40%) and low level poverty districts (below 30%).

After 1994, poverty has declined steadily in both rural and urban areas of Tamil Nadu and the state has a smaller share of India's poor relative to its population. After 2005, the poverty reduction in this state has been faster than in many other states in India. Tamil Nadu leads in the poverty alleviation programmes during 2014-2017. Government of India is implementing many policies and programmes to eradicate poverty.

These policies and programmes, if continued, will completely eradicate the poverty in the state. In future, Tamil Nadu can become a model of development in India.

Top and Bottom MPI districts in Tamil Nadu

S. No	Top 5 Districts	Rank	Bottom 5 Districts	Rank
1	Kancheepuram	1	Dharmapuri	32
2	Chennai	2	Perambalur	31
3	Cuddalore	3	Ramanathapuram	30
4	Coimbatore	4	Virudhunagar	29
5	Nagapattinam	5	Ariyalur	28

3.6 Nutrition and Health Status

3.6.1. Status of Nutrition

We noted earlier that food security includes nutrition security too. Though our country has reached self-sufficiency in food production, the nutrition status of the population has not seen corresponding levels of improvement. In 2015-16, 27% of the rural women and 16% of the urban women (in the age group of 15-49 years) were counted as undernourished or chronically energy deficient by the National Family Health Survey.

More than half of the women in the reproductive age group (15-49 years) in both rural and urban India were anaemic in 2015-16. As regards children, about 60% of the rural



TN commitment on Nutrition

Amartya Sen, Noble Prize winning Economist, has observed that in India, hunger is not enough of a political priority. The public expenditure on health is very low and funds allocated to programmes like child nutrition remain unspent. It is only in States like Tamil Nadu that he sees a political will and commitment to tackle these issues by setting goals like achieving the status of a “Malnutrition Free State”.

and 56% of the urban children (in the age group of 6–59 months) are counted to be anaemic, in 2015–16. About 41% of the rural and 31%



Underweight Child

of urban children are stunted, that is, they are not of the required height in correspondence to their age. Another indicator of nutrition deficiency among children is “underweight”, which is weight in relation to age. In India, in 2015–16, about 20% of children (in the age group of 6–59 months) in rural and urban India are estimated to be underweight.

Thus, though our country has reached self-sufficiency in food production, we are yet to attain food security for all.

3.6.2. Nutrition and Health Status in Tamil Nadu

Nutrition plays a crucial role in human health and well-being. At the national level, despite higher economic growth, improvements in human development indicators like nutrition levels of the population have been unacceptably slow. A large number of Indian children are stunted. A substantial number of Indian children and women are underweight, anaemic and suffer from micronutrient deficiencies. To address these concerns, the Central and state governments have been channelling

substantial resources into various health and nutrition schemes and programmes like Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS), mid-day meals, Reproductive and Child Health Programmes (RCH) and National Rural Health Mission (NRHM). However, an effective scaling up of these efforts is required to mitigate the incidence of under-nutrition in the country.

Tamil Nadu has played a pioneering role in bringing about significant changes in the health and nutrition status of children under six years of age, pregnant women, lactating mothers and adolescent girls. The Government of Tamil Nadu’s successive budget outlays for nutrition and health are the highest in the country. The performance of the ICDS scheme and the Puratchi Thalaivar MGR Nutritious Meal Programme (PTMGRNMP) in Tamil Nadu are considered one of the best in the country.

The Government of Tamil Nadu’s policy for “A Malnutrition Free Tamil Nadu” guides the state’s long-term multi-sectoral strategy for eliminating malnutrition. The goal is “reducing human malnutrition of all types to the levels of best performing countries”. In Tamil Nadu, ICDS is being implemented through 54,439 Child Centres (comprising 49,499 Anganwadi Centres and 4,940 Mini Anganwadi Centres) in 434 Child Development Blocks (385 rural, 47 urban and 2 tribal).

With steady expansion into unreached areas, increasing coverage of marginalised groups, enhanced allocations and enlarged scope of services, ICDS is now considered to be one of the world’s largest programmes of its kind and a model for the holistic development of the child. To ensure that services reach the intended beneficiaries, the programme has been universalised and convergence promoted with allied departments dealing with health, education, drinking water, sanitation etc.

The PTMGRNMP is considered to be the largest noon meal programme in the country for combating malnutrition among children,

increasing primary school enrolment and reducing dropout rates. Other states in the country have modelled their noon meal programmes along the lines of Tamil Nadu's pioneering efforts.



ICDS Scheme

Boosting peer group engagement

- Efforts will be made to strengthen the 'Padhumaiyar Kuzhu' for empowering girls and making them persuasive catalysts of change.



Padhumaiyar Kuzhu

- Innovative approaches will be considered for drawing adolescent girls into the programme, connecting them with various services and encouraging their participation in activities. A mobile centre was rolled for widening the reach of services in nine districts.
- Distribution and monitoring of the 'Padhumaiyar card' will be further strengthened.

Important ongoing Schemes in Tamil Nadu

1. Under Dr. Muthulakshmi Reddy Maternity Benefit Scheme, financial assistance to the tune of ₹ 12,000 is being disbursed to poor pregnant women with the aim of meeting expenses on nutritious diet, to compensate for loss of income during the delivery period and to avoid low birth weight of new born babies in three installments to those availing antenatal care, delivering and immunising the babies born in government institutions.
2. The Chief Minister's Comprehensive Health Insurance Scheme was launched in the state in 2011-12 with the aim to provide Universal Healthcare to All by providing free medical and surgical treatment in Government and private hospitals to any family whose annual income is less than ₹ 72,000 by meeting all expenses relating to the hospitalisation of the beneficiary.
3. Tamil Nadu Health Systems Projects (TNHSP) has launched ambulance services free of cost (The 108 Emergency Ambulance Service).
4. The School Health Programme mainly emphasises on providing comprehensive healthcare services to all students studying in Government and Government-aided schools.
5. The National Leprosy Eradication programme is being implemented in the state with the aim to detect and to provide sustained regular treatment to all leprosy patients.



School Health Programme



Some Nutrition Programmes in Tamil Nadu

1. **Purachi Thalaivar M.G.R. Nutrition Meal Programme:**

It is being implemented in the rural areas from 1 July 1982 and in urban areas for the school students from 1984, old age pensioners from 1983 and for pregnant women from 1995.

2. **National Programme of Nutritional Support to Primary Education**

3. **General ICDS Projects and World Bank Assisted**

Integrated Child Development Services: The services started in 1991 in 318 blocks covering 24 districts. In 1999 this extended to 318 rural blocks and 19,500 centres.

4. **Pradhan Manthri Gramodaya Yojana Scheme (PMGYS):** In this scheme, nutrition supplementation in the form of weaning food is given to children in the age group of 6 months to 36 months in the unreached hamlets.

5. **Tamil Nadu Integrated Nutrition Programme:** This project was started in 1980 targeting at 6 to 36 months old children and pregnant and lactating women.

6. **Mid-Day Meal Programme:** This programme has been introduced for children between ages 2 and 14 attending balwadis or schools at the expense of ₹ 0.90 per beneficiary. This programme covered 5.57 crore children in 4,426 blocks.



Mid-Day Meal Programme

SUMMARY

- Food security exists when all people, at all times, have physical, social and economic access to sufficient, safe and nutritious food, which meets their dietary needs and food preferences for an active and healthy life.
- The term was broadened to include the three basic components of food and nutrition security. They are availability, access and absorption.
- The Green Revolution was born in the country paving way for self-sufficiency in food grain production.
- The National Food Security Act (NFSA) was passed by the Indian Parliament in 2013.
- Purchasing power is the value of a currency expressed in terms of the amount of goods or services that one unit of money can buy. Price increases purchasing power declines and vice versa.
- The new agricultural policy based on export agricultural goods was announced by the Central government in 2018.
- Multi-dimensional poverty measures can be used to create a more comprehensive picture.
- Health has an important role in human resources development. Better medical care leads to a healthy population.

A-Z GLOSSARY

Availability	That which can be used, attainable	அடையத்தகுந்த
Accessibility	Right to enter	அணுகுமுறை
Affordability	Ability to be afforded	செலவிடத்தகுந்த
Sufficient	Enough	போதுமான
Purchasing power	The financial ability to buy produce	பொருட்கள் வாங்கும் திறன்
Productivity	Power of producing	உற்பத்தி செய்யும் ஆற்றல்
Degradation	To reduce to a lower rank	மதிப்புக்கு குறைவு
Unidimensional	Having one direction	ஒரு பரிமாணம்
Malnourished	Lack of proper nutrition	உட்கட்டச்சத்தின்மை



EXERCISE



I. Choose the correct answer

- _____ of food is physical availability of food stocks in desired quantities, which is a function of domestic production, changes in stocks and imports.
 - Availability of food
 - Access to food
 - Absorption of food
 - none
- Buffer stock is the stock of food grains, namely wheat and rice, procured by the government through the _____.
 - FCI
 - Consumer Cooperatives
 - ICICI
 - IFCI
- Which is correct?.
 - HYV-High Yielding Varieties
 - MSP-Minimum Support Price
 - PDS-Public Distribution System
 - FCI-Food Corporation of India
 - i and ii are correct
 - iii and iv are correct
 - ii and iii are correct
 - all are correct
- _____ extended assistance through its Public Law 480.
 - United States of America
 - India
 - Singapore
 - UK
- _____ revolution was born in India paving way for self sufficiency in food grain production.
 - Blue Revolution
 - White Revolution
 - Green Revolution
 - Grey Revolution
- _____ is the only state in India to adopt universal PDS.
 - Kerala
 - Andhra Pradesh
 - Tamil Nadu
 - Karnataka
- _____ is the process of providing or obtaining the food necessary for health and growth.
 - Health
 - Nutrition
 - Sanitation
 - Security
- Tamil Nadu Integrated Nutrition Programme was started in _____.
 - 1980
 - 1975
 - 1955
 - 1985



9. _____ status is one of the indicators of the overall well-being of population and human resources development.
- Health
 - Nutritional
 - Economic
 - Wealth
10. Tamil Nadu Health System Projects has launched _____ service at free of cost.
- 106 ambulance
 - 108 ambulance
 - 107 ambulance
 - 105 ambulance

II. Fill in the blanks

- _____ foundation from USA introduced HYV in India.
- _____ is an important indicator of nutrition deficiency.
- In the year _____ National Food Security Act was passed by the Indian Parliament.
- _____ play an important role in the supply of quality goods at responsible rates to common people.
- _____ is the value of currency expressed in terms of the amount of goods and services that one unit of money can buy.

III. Match the following

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. Consumer cooperatives | – subsidized rates |
| 2. Public Distribution System | – 2013 |
| 3. UNDP | – least poor region |
| 4. National Food Security Act | – supply of quality goods |
| 5. Kerala | – United Nations Development Programme |

IV. Assertion and Reason

1. **Assertion (A):** Purchasing power increases, price decreases and vice versa.
Reason (R): The production of goods decline, the price of goods increases and then the purchasing power is affected.
- A is correct, R is false
 - Both A and R are false statements
 - A is correct but R is not a correct explanation
 - A is correct, R is the correct explanation of A

V. Answer in short

- Define food security according to FAO.
- What are the basic components of food and nutrition security?
- Explain 'ship to mouth' phenomenon.
- What is the role of FCI in Green Revolution?
- What are the effects of Green Revolution?
- Write a note on Differential Universal PDS and Targeted PDS.
- Write a short note on purchasing power.
- What are the main reasons for the New Agricultural Policy?
- Write short note on multi-dimensional nature of poverty.
- Write some name of the nutrition programmes in Tamil Nadu.

VI. Answer in detail

- Elucidate why the Green Revolution was born.
- Explain Minimum Support Price.
- Elaborate the Public Distribution System.
- What are the factors affecting the purchasing power and explain them.
- Write briefly some of the important objectives of India's agricultural policy.
- Discuss about the Multi-dimensional Poverty Index India and Tamil Nadu.
- Briefly explain the nutritional and health status of Tamil Nadu.

VII. Activity and Project

1. Visit nearby “Uzhavar Sandhai” and collect the information about the functions of market.
2. Collect information about health centre functioning nearby your location.
4. *Pratiyogita Darpan*–Indian Economy.
5. Economic Survey 2017–18.
6. *The Gazette of India*–“The National Food Security Act 2013”.



REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Dr. S. Sankaran, *Indian Economy*, India.
2. Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare. Annual report 2016–17.
3. Nutrition & Food Security. UN India.



ICT CORNER

Steps

- Open the browser and type the URL given below.
- Click on the left side menu to view the policies on food security, procurement data for current marketing season, minimum support price of food grains.
- For example, click on the minimum support price of paddy. You can see the yearwise minimum support price of paddy, wheat and coarsegrain.
- Likewise, you can view regionwise procurement also.



B376_10_SOCIAL_EM

Unit - 4

Government and Taxes



Learning Objectives

- To understand the role of the government and development policies
- To gain knowledge about tax and its types
- To study how is tax levied
- To gain insight into black money and tax evasion
- To know the difference between the tax and other payments
- To understand the taxes and its development



Introduction

Tax is levied by government for the development of the state's economy. The revenue of the government depends upon direct and indirect taxes. Direct taxes are levied on income of the persons and the indirect taxes are levied on goods and services by which the government mobilises its "financial resources".

4.1 Role of Government in Development Policies

4.1.1. The role of government and development policies

In India, the three levels of governments, namely, union, state and local, have been carrying out various functions for the benefit of people and society at large. These roles are into divided into seven categories for easy understanding.

1. **Defence:** This is an essential security function to protect our nation from our enemies. We know that we have three services, namely, army, navy and air force. The Union government is responsible for creating and maintaining defence forces.
2. **Foreign policy:** In today's world, we need to maintain friendly relationships with all the other countries in the world. India is committed to world peace. We should also maintain cordial economic relationships through exports and imports, sending and receiving investments and labour. This service is also provided by the Union government.
3. **Conduct of periodic elections:** India is a democratic country. We elect our representatives to Parliament and state assemblies. The Union government creates laws and administrative system and conducts elections to these two legislature institutions. Similarly the state governments conduct elections to local bodies within the state.

4. **Law and order:** Both the Union and state governments enact numerous laws to protect our rights, properties and to regulate our economy and society. To settle disputes, the Union government has a vibrant judicial system consisting of courts at the national, state and lower levels and state governments take the responsibility for administering the police force in respective states.
5. **Public administration and provision of public goods:** The government generally administers the economy and society through various departments, for example, revenue department, schools, hospitals, rural development and urban development. The list of departments with the Union and state governments are available in the public domain. The local governments provide public goods like local roads, drainage, drinking water and waste collection and disposal.
6. **Redistribution of income and poverty alleviation:** Governments collect various taxes to finance the various activities mentioned earlier. The taxes are collected in a way that the high-income people can bring in more tax revenue to the government than the poor. The governments also spend money such that the poor are given some basic necessities of life like food, shelter, clothing education, health care and monthly income to the very poor persons. Thus collecting taxes and spending for the poor is how the government redistributes income and introduces measures to reduce poverty.
7. **Regulate the economy:** The Union government, through the Reserve Bank of India, controls money supply and controls the interest rate, inflation and foreign exchange rate. The main objective is to remove too much of fluctuation in these rates. The Union also controls the economy through various other agencies such as Securities Exchange Board of India and Competition Commission of India.

All the governments in India run public sector enterprises to provide important goods and services at affordable rates to the people.

4.2 Tax

The origin of the word "tax" is from "taxation," which means an estimate.

Taxation is a means by which governments finance their expenditure by imposing charges on citizens and corporate entities. The main purpose of taxation is to accumulate funds for the functioning of the government machinery. Tax has come into forefront on account of the new concept of "welfare state". Modern governments do not confine themselves to law and order only. The importance of public finance (tax) has vastly increased in recent years.

Taxes are compulsory payments to government without expectation of direct return (or) benefit to the tax payer. Prof. Seligman also defined a tax as "a compulsory contribution from a person to the government to defray the expenses incurred in the common interest of all, without reference to special benefits conferred."

4.2.1. Why Taxes?

The levying of taxes aims to raise revenue to fund governance or to alter prices in order to affect demand. States and their functional equivalents throughout history have used money provided by taxation to carry out many functions. Some of these include expenditures on economic infrastructure (transportation, sanitation, public safety, education, healthcare



Taxation in India has its roots from the period of *Manu Smriti* and *Arthashastra*. The present Indian tax system is based on this ancient tax system.



Tax system

Every type of tax has some advantages and some disadvantages. So we have a tax system, that is, a collection of variety of taxes. All countries use a variety of taxes. There are some characteristics of tax system that economists think should be followed while designing a tax system. These characteristics are called as canons of taxation. From Adam Smith, many economists have given lists of canons of taxation. It is important to recall those common among them for discussion here.

Canon of equity – Since tax is a compulsory payment, all economists agree that equity is the cardinal principle in designing the tax system. The equity principal says that the rich should pay more tax revenue to government than the poor, because rich has more ability than the poor to pay the tax. Moreover, after payment of tax, you will find the economic difference is reduced between the rich and the poor. You can do an exercise to find out which of the taxes adhere to the canon of equity.

Canon of Certainty – Government should announce in advance the tax system so that every tax payer will be able to calculate how much tax amount one may have to pay during a year to the government. In other words, government should not change the tax system frequently and should not announce sudden changes in the tax system.

Canons of Economy and Convenience – These two canons are related. As tax payers we incur a cost to process our accounts and pay the tax, for example, salary paid to accountants and auditors. Similarly government also pays salary to its taxmen and run huge institutions. If the tax is simple, then the cost of collecting taxes (tax payer cost + tax collector cost) will be very low. Further, tax should be collected from a person at the time he gets enough money to pay the tax. This is called canon of convenience. A convenient tax reduces the cost of collecting tax.

Canons of Productivity and Elasticity – Government should choose the taxes that can get enough tax revenue to it. In other words, it should choose a few taxes that can fetch more tax revenue, instead of lots of taxes and each one of them getting a little tax revenue. This is canon of productivity. Tax is paid by the people out their incomes. Therefore the tax system should be designed in such a way that the people automatically pay more tax revenue if their incomes grow. This is called canon of elasticity. In a broader sense, as the economy is growing the people will get more income and consequently they will also pay more tax revenue to government if the tax system is elastic.

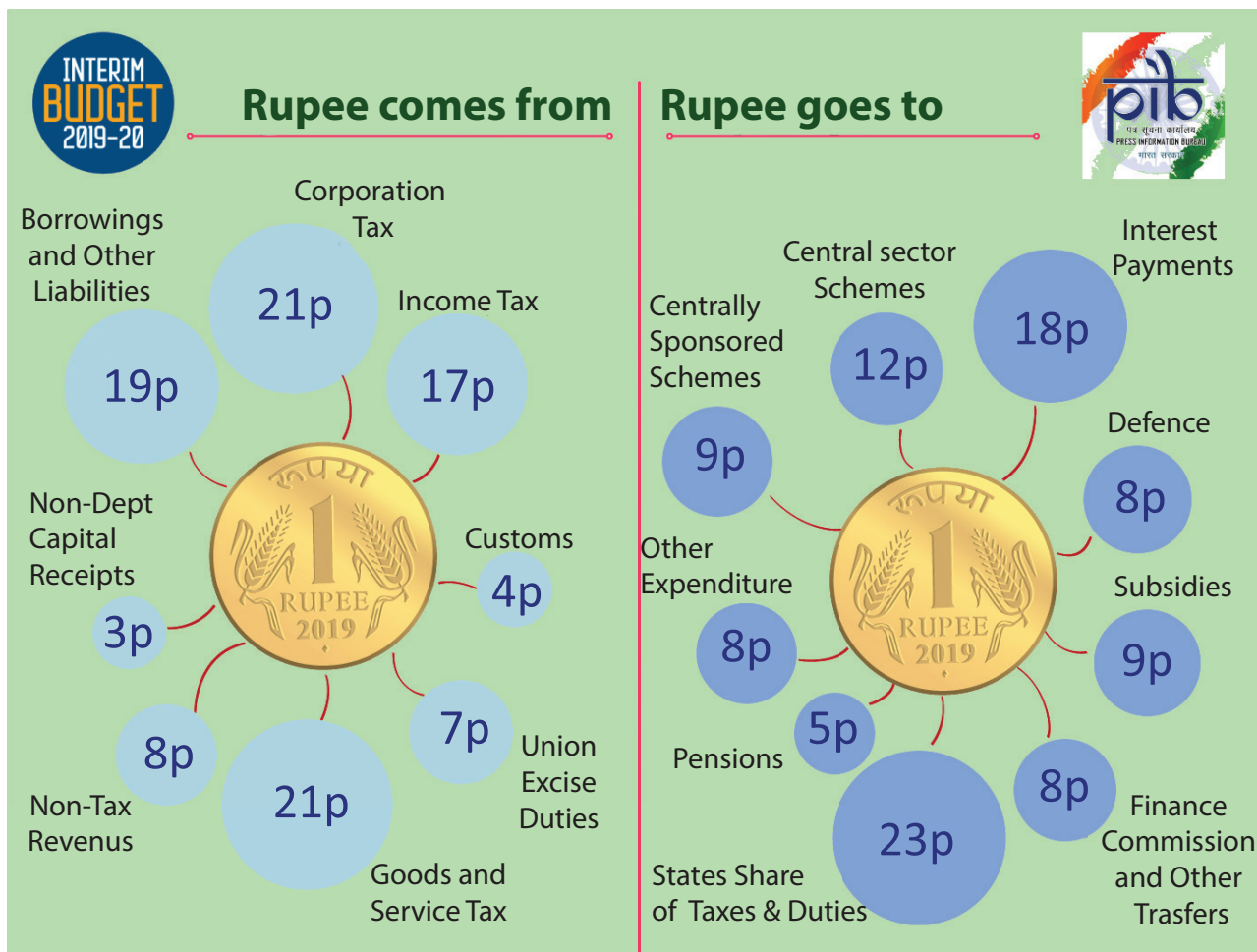
systems, to name a few), military, scientific research, culture and the arts, public works and public insurance and the operation of government itself. A government's ability to raise taxes is called its fiscal capacity.



In India, Income Tax was introduced for the first time in 1860 by Sir James Wilson in order to meet the losses sustained by the Government on account of the Mutiny of 1857.

When expenditures exceed tax revenue, a government accumulates debt. A portion of taxes may be used to service past debts. Governments also use taxes to fund welfare and public services. These services can include education systems, pensions for the elderly, unemployment benefits and public transportation. Energy, water and waste management systems are also common public utilities.

According to the proponents of the theory of money creation, taxes are not needed for government revenue, as long as the government in question is able to issue fiat money. The purpose of taxation is to maintain the stability of the currency,



express public policy regarding the distribution of wealth, subsidising certain industries or population groups or isolating the costs of certain benefits such as highways or social security.

4.3 Types of Taxes

4.3.1 Direct Taxes

A tax imposed on an individual or organisation, which is paid directly, is a direct tax. The burden of a direct tax cannot be shifted to others. J.S. Mill defines a direct tax as “one which is demanded from the very persons who it is intended or desired should pay it.” Some direct taxes are income tax, wealth tax and corporation tax.

Income tax

Income tax is the most common and most important tax levied on an individual in India. It is charged directly based on the income of a person. The rate at which it is charged varies, depending on the level of income.

Activity

Students are asked to search a Income Tax website and know the Income Tax slab for current year.

Corporate tax

This tax is levied on companies that exist as separate entities from their shareholders. It is charged on royalties, interest gains from sale of capital assets located in India and fees for a technical services and dividends.

Foreign companies are taxed on income that arises or is deemed to arise in India.

Income	For Indian Companies	For Foreign Companies
Less than ₹ 50 crore	25%	40%
More than ₹ 50 crore	30%	40%

Wealth tax

Wealth tax is charged on the benefits derived from property ownership. The same property will be taxed every year on its current market value. The tax is levied on the individuals and companies alike.

In India taxes are collected by all the three tiers of government. There are taxes that can be easily collected by the Union government. In India almost all the direct taxes are collected by the Union governments. Taxes on goods and services are collected by both Union and state governments. The taxes on properties are collected by local governments.

In India we collect more tax revenue through indirect taxes than through direct taxes. The major indirect taxes in India are customs duty and GST. Both these taxes have different tax rates for different goods and services. The governments try to design in such a way that the rich consumers pay more tax than the poor. However, poor still pay more through these taxes. Therefore, many argue we should reduce the indirect taxes and increase the collection through direct taxes.

Indian tax system adheres to all the canons of taxation. But there are arguments that often the equity principle is compromised and productivity is lost when we tinker with tax system to the advantage of a few. We announce the tax system once in a year in the annual budget. It is very rarely breached by announcing mid-year tax changes. Therefore, Indian tax system adheres to canon of certainty more than anything else.

4.3.2 Indirect Taxes

If the burden of the tax can be shifted to others, it is an indirect tax. The impact is on one person while the incidence is on the another person. Therefore, in the case of indirect taxes, the tax payer is not the tax bearer.

Some indirect taxes are stamp duty, entertainment tax, excise duty and goods and service tax (GST).

Stamp duty

Stamp duty is a tax that is paid on official documents like marriage registration or documents related to a property and in some contractual agreements.

Entertainment tax

Entertainment tax is a duty that is charged by the government on any source of entertainment provided. This tax can be charged on movie tickets, tickets to amusement parks, exhibitions and even sports events.

Excise duty

An excise tax is any duty on manufactured goods levied at the movement of manufacture, rather than at sale. Excise is typically imposed in addition to an indirect tax such as a sales tax.

4.3.3. Goods and service tax (GST)

The goods and service tax (GST) is one of the indirect taxes. The GST was passed in Parliament on 29 March 2017. The act came into effect on 1 July 2017. The motto is one nation, one market, one tax.

Goods and service tax is defined as the tax levied when a consumer buys a good or service. That aims to replace all indirect taxes levied on goods and services by the Central and state governments. GST would eliminate the cascading effect of taxes on the production and distribution of goods and services. It is also a “one-point tax” unlike value-added tax (VAT), which was a multipoint tax.



France was the first country to implement GST in 1954 and many other European countries introduced GST in 1970-80.

4.4 How Taxes Are Levied?

Tax is levied by the government progressively, proportionately as well as regressively.

Structure of Goods and Service Tax (GST)

State Goods and Service Tax (SGST): Intra state (within the state)

VAT/sales tax, purchase tax, entertainment tax, luxury tax, lottery tax and state surcharge and cesses

Central Goods and Service Tax (CGST): Intra state (within the state)

Central Excise Duty, service tax, countervailing duty, additional duty of customs, surcharge, education and secondary/higher secondary cess

Integrated Goods and Service Tax (IGST): Inter state (integrated GST)

There are four major GST rates: 5%, 12%, 18% and 28%. Almost all the necessities of life like vegetables and food grains are exempted from this tax.

Progressive tax

Progressive tax rate is one in which the rate of taxation increases (multiplier) as the tax base increases (multiplicand). The amount of tax payable is calculated by multiplying the tax base with the tax rate. In the case of a progressive tax, the multiplicand (income) increases. When income increases, the tax rate also increases. This is known as a progressive tax.

Example:

Tax Base	Tax Rate	Amount of Tax
₹10,000	10%	₹1000
₹20,000	15%	₹3000
₹30,000	25%	₹7500
₹40,000	40%	₹16000

Proportionate taxes

Tax levied on goods and service in a fixed portion is known as proportionate taxes. All tax payers contribute the same proportion of their incomes. In this method, the rate of taxation is the same regardless of the size of income. The tax amount realised varies in the same proportions that of income.

Example:

Tax Base	Tax Rate	Amount of Tax
₹10,000	10%	₹1000
₹20,000	10%	₹2000
₹30,000	10%	₹3000
₹40,000	10%	₹4000

Regressive Taxes

It implies that higher the rate of tax lower the income groups than in the case of higher income groups. It is a very opposite of progressive taxation.

Progressive Tax	Income increase	Tax also Increase	E.g. Income Tax
Proportional Tax	Income Increase	Tax Decrease	E.g. Corporate Tax
Regressive Tax	Income change	Same tax always	E.g. Sales Tax

4.5 Black Money



Black Money

Black money is funds earned on the black market on which income and other taxes have not been paid. The unaccounted money that is concealed from the tax administrator is called black money.

Recent Legislative Initiatives to curb Black Money in India

- 1 Constitution of the Special Investigation Team (SIT) on Black Money under Chairmanship and Vice-Chairmanship of two former Judges of Hon'ble Supreme Court.
- 2 Enactment of a comprehensive law – The Black Money (Undisclosed Foreign Income and Assets) and Imposition of Tax Act, 2015 .
- 3 Constitution of Multi-Agency Group (MAG) consisting of officers of Central Board of Direct Taxes (CBDT), Reserve Bank of India (RBI), Enforcement Directorate (ED) and Financial Intelligence Unit (FIU) for the investigation of recent revelations in Panama paper leaks.
- 4 Double Taxation Avoidance Agreements (DTAAs)/Tax Information Exchange Agreements (TIEAs)/Multilateral Conventions.
- 5 Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act (FATCA).
- 6 Money-laundering Act, 2002 through the Finance Act, 2015.
- 7 Enactment of the Benami Transactions (Prohibition) Amendment Act, 2016 .
- 8 Launching of 'Operation Clean Money' on 31 January 2017.
- 9 Lokpal and Lokayukta act.
- 10 The Real Estate (Regulation and Development) Act, 2016.

4.5.1. Causes of Black Money

Several sources of black money are identified as causes.

1. **Shortage of goods:** Shortage of goods, whether natural or artificial, is the root cause of black money. Controls are often introduced to check black money.
2. **Licensing proceeding:** It is firmly believed that the system of controls permits, quotes and licences are associated with maldistribution of commodities in short supply, which results in the generation of black money.
3. **Contribution of the industrial sector:** Industrial sector has been the major contributor to black money. For example, the Controller of Public Limited Companies tries to buy commodities at low prices and get them billed at high amounts and pockets the difference personally.
4. **Smuggling:** Smuggling is one of the major sources of black money. When India had rigid system of exchange



controls, precious metals like gold and silver, textiles and electronics goods were levied a heavy excise duty. Bringing these goods by evading the authorities is smuggling.

5. **Tax structure:** When the tax rate is high, more black money is generated.

4.6 Tax Evasion



Tax evasion is the illegal evasion of taxes by individuals, corporations and trusts. Tax evasion often entails taxpayers deliberately misrepresenting the true state of their affairs to the tax authorities to reduce their tax liability and includes dishonest tax reporting, such as declaring less income, profits or gains than the amounts actually earned, or overstating deductions.

Tax evasion is an activity commonly associated with the informal economy. One measure of the extent of tax evasion is the amount of unreported income, which is the difference between the amount of income that should be reported to the tax authorities and the actual amount reported.

Tax evasion activities included

- Underreporting income
- Inflating deductions or expenses
- Hiding money
- Hiding interest in offshore accounts

4.6.1 Causes of tax evasion

- 1 Tax evasion resulting in black money prevents the resource mobilisation efforts of the Union government. Shortage of funds distorts implementation of developmental plans and forces the government to resort to deficit financing in case public expenditure is inelastic.
- 2 Tax evasion interferes with the declared economic policies of the government by distorting saving and investment patterns and availability of resources for various sectors of the economy.
- 3 Tax evasion undermines the equity attribute of the tax system. Honest taxpayers willingly bear disproportionate tax burden, feel demoralised and lured to join the tax evaders' camp.

- 4 Tax evasion and black money encourage the concentration of economic power in the hands of undeserving groups in the country, which, in turn, is a threatening to the economy in its way.
- 5 Evasion of tax consumes time and energy of tax administration to disentangle the intricate manipulations of tax dodgers.

4.6.2 Tax evasion penalties

- 1 If a person wilfully commits the act of tax evasion, he may face felony charges. Tax evasion penalties include imprisonment of up to five years and high amount as fines.
- 2 The defendant may also be ordered to pay for the costs of prosecution.
- 3 Other tax evasion penalties include community service, probation and restitution depending on the circumstances of the case.
- 4 Tax evasion penalties can be harsh, depending on the severity of the crime.

4.7 Tax and other Payments

Taxes are compulsory payments to government without expectation of direct return (or) benefit to the tax payer.

Payment includes income received from production and supply of goods and services

4.7.1 Difference between Tax and other Payments

S. No.	Tax	Payments
1	Tax is compulsory to the government without getting any direct benefits	Fee is the payment for getting any service
2	If the element of revenue for general purpose of the state predominates, the levy becomes a tax	While a fee is a payment for a specific benefit privilege although the special to the primary purpose of regulation in public interest.
3	Tax is a compulsory payment	Fee is a voluntary payment.
4	If tax is imposed on a person, he has to pay it; otherwise he has to be penalised	On the other hand fee is not paid if the person do not want to get the service
5	In this case, tax payer does not expect any direct benefit. Example: Income tax, gift tax, wealth tax, VAT etc.	Fee payer can get direct benefit for paying fee. Examples: stamp fee, driving license fee, government registration fee

of public enterprises and revenue from administrative activities. Payments from non-tax sources other than tax income is known as payments.

Some payments are fees, fines and penalties, and forfeitures.

4.8 Taxes and Development

The role of taxation in developing economics is as follows.

- 1. Resource mobilisation:** Taxation enables the government to mobilise a substantial amount of revenue. The tax revenue is generated by imposing direct taxes such as personal income tax and corporate tax and indirect taxes such as customs duty, excise duty, etc.
- 2. Reduction in inequalities of income:** Taxation follows the principle of equity. The direct taxes are progressive in nature. Also certain

indirect taxes, such as taxes on luxury goods, is also progressive in nature.

- 3. Social welfare:** Taxation generates social welfare. Social welfare is generated due to higher taxes on certain undesirable products like alcoholic products.
- 4. Foreign exchange:** Taxation encourages exports and restricts imports, Generally developing countries and even the developed countries do not impose taxes on export items.
- 5. Regional development:** Taxation plays an important role in regional development, Tax incentives such as tax holidays for setting up industries in backward regions, which induces business firms to set up industries in such regions.
- 6. Control of inflation:** Taxation can be used as an instrument for controlling inflation. Through taxation the government can control inflation by reducing the tax on the commodities.

SUMMARY

- Direct Tax is a tax paid directly to the Union government or to state or local governments, such as income tax and property tax.
- Income Tax is a tax paid by individuals and businesses based on earned and unearned income.
- Local Tax is a tax charged by a local government, such as a city or country.
- Tax Rate is the percentage of income that is owed as tax.
- Black Money is earned illegally or on which be necessary tax is not paid.

A-Z GLOSSARY

Levied	To impose taxes	வரி (விதிக்கப்பட்ட)
Fluctuation	To change	ஏற்ற இறக்கம்
Affordable	Inexpensive, reasonably priced	கட்டுப்படியாகக்கூடிய
Defray	Meet the expenses	செலவை ஈடுகட்ட
Proponents	Person who advocates theory	கொள்கை மொழிவோர்
Progressive Tax	Happening or developing gradually or in stages	முற்போக்கான வரி
Regressive Tax	Taking a proportionally greater amount from those on lower incomes.	பிற்போக்கு வரி
Proportionate Tax	(of a variable quantity) having a constant ratio to another quantity.	விகிதாசார வரி
Evasion	The action of evading something	ஏய்ப்பு



EXERCISE

I. Choose the correct answer



- The three levels of governments in India are
 - Union, state and local
 - Central, state and village
 - Union, municipality and panchayat
 - None of the above
- In India, taxes are including
 - Direct taxes
 - Indirect taxes.
 - Both (a) and (b)
 - None of these
- Which is the role of government and development policies?.
 - Defence
 - Foreign policy
 - Regulate the economy
 - all of above
- The most common and important tax levied on an individual in India is
 - Service tax
 - Excise duty.
 - Income tax
 - Central sales tax
- Under which tax one nation, one uniform tax is ensured
 - Value added tax (VAT)
 - Income tax
 - Goods and service tax
 - Sales tax
- Income tax was introduced in india for the first time in the year _____.
 - 1860
 - 1870
 - 1880
 - 1850
- _____ tax is charged on the benefits derived from property ownership.
 - Income tax
 - Wealth tax
 - Corporate tax
 - Excise duty
- What are identified as causes of black money?
 - Shortage of goods
 - High tax rate
 - Smuggling
 - All of above

- Tax evasion is the illegal evasion of taxes by
 - Individuals
 - Corporations
 - Trusts
 - All of the above
- Payments are
 - Fees and fines
 - Penalties and forfeitures
 - None of the above
 - a and b

II. Fill in the blanks

- _____ is levied by government for the development of the state's economy.
- The origin of the word 'tax' is from the word _____.
- The burden of the _____ tax cannot be shifted to others.
- _____ tax is levied on companies that exist as separate entities from their shareholders.
- The Goods and Service Tax act came into effect on _____.
- The unaccounted money that is concealed from the tax administrator is called _____.

III. Choose the correct statement

- Which of the following statement is correct about GST?
 - GST is the 'one point tax'.
 - This aims to replace all direct taxes levied on goods and services by the Central and State governments.
 - It will be implemented from 1 July 2017 throughout the country.
 - It will unified the tax structure in India.
 - (i) and (ii) are correct
 - (ii), (iii) and (iv) are correct
 - (i), (iii) and (iv) are correct
 - All are correct
- Choose the incorrect statements.
 - Shortage of goods, whether natural or artificial, is the root cause of black money.

- (ii) Industrial sector has been the major contributor to black money.
- (iii) Smuggling is one of the major sources of black money.
- (iv) When the tax rate is low, more black money is generated.
- a) (i) and (ii) b) (iv)
c) (i) d) (ii) and (iii)

IV. Match the following

- | | | |
|----------------|---|-----------------|
| 1. Income Tax | - | Value added tax |
| 2. Excise duty | - | 1 July 2017 |
| 3. VAT | - | Smuggling |
| 4. GST | - | Direct tax |
| 5. Black money | - | Indirect tax |

V. Give Short Answers

1. Define tax.
2. Why we pay tax to the government?
3. Write the canons of tax system?
4. What are the types of tax? Give examples.
5. Write short note on Goods and Service Tax.
6. What is progressive tax?
7. What is meant by black money?
8. What is tax evasion?
9. Write some causes of tax evasion.
10. What is the difference between tax and payments?

VI. Brief Answer

1. Briefly explain the role of government in development policies.
2. Explain some direct and indirect taxes.
3. Write the structure of GST.
4. What is black money? Write the causes of black money.
5. Explain the role of taxation in economic development.

VII. Activity and Projects

1. Collect information about the local taxes (water, electricity and house tax etc).
2. Students purchase some goods on the shop. The teacher and students discuss those goods, maximum retail price, purchasing price or GST.



REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Gaurav Aklani, *Role of Taxation in Developing Country in India*.
2. Sankaran, *Fiscal Economics*.
3. Dr.U.K. Sudha Nayak, B.P. Tygai, and Dr.H. Girija, *Public Finance*.

Unit - 5

Industrial Clusters in Tamil Nadu



Learning Objectives

- To know the historical development of Industrial Clusters in Tamil Nadu
- To know the Tamil Nadu government policies and Industrial development Agencies
- To understand the impact of Government policies
- To know the role of the Entrepreneur



Introduction - Industrialisation

Generally, “any human activity which is engaged in the conversion of raw materials into readily usable materials is called an industry”. Industrialisation refers to the process of using modern techniques of production to produce goods that are required by both consumers and other producers on a large scale. While some consumer goods such as phones and television sets meet the requirements of consumers, industries also produce goods like components, machine parts and machines that are required by other producers. The historical process of a steady increase in the number and scale of manufacturing in a country exists for a long time. It is important for several reasons. In this chapter we will learn the nature of industrialisation of Tamil Nadu, importance of industrial clusters, how industrial clusters have developed in Tamil Nadu and the role of government initiatives in promoting industries.

5.1 Importance of Industrialisation

To understand importance of industries, we need to understand why the share of agriculture in an economy's income and employment decreases with development. First, demand for food remains constant with regard to income. Therefore, as an economy grows and incomes increase, consumers tend to spend a lesser share of their income on products from the agricultural sector.

Second, even the food that is consumed is subject to more transformation as an economy expands and there is greater division of labour between people and between regions. Food products are taken over longer distances, processed and branded. This also requires that food products have to be preserved. As a result, the prices that farmers get tend to be much less compared to the prices at which consumers buy.

Third, there are limits to the ability of agriculture to absorb labour due to the declining marginal productivity of land. As a result, labour productivity in the agricultural



sector cannot increase much. Wages too cannot therefore increase and as a result poverty levels may remain high, especially when more and more people continue to rely on agriculture for their livelihood.

Due to all these factors, there is a need for an economy's production and employment base to diversify away from agriculture. Development economics therefore recognises the need for structural transformation of the economy where the share of non-agricultural sectors tend to get increase steadily. Such transformation and diversification through industrialisation is therefore seen as important for an economy's development.

5.1.1 What benefits does industrialisation bring to an economy?

As stated earlier, it is essential to produce inputs to other producers in an economy. Even agriculture requires inputs from industry such as fertilisers and tractors to increase productivity.

Second, a market exists for both producers and consumer goods. Even services like banking, transport and trade are dependent on production of industrial goods.

Third, by using modern methods of production, industries contribute to better productivity and hence lower cost of production of all goods produced. It therefore helps people to buy goods at a cheaper rate and help create demand for more products.

Fourth, through such expansion of production, industrialisation helps to absorb the labour force coming out of agriculture. Employment generation is therefore an important objective of industrialisation.

Fifth, a related advantage of industrialisation is therefore technological change. Through use of modern techniques, industrialisation contributes to learning of such methods and their improvement. As a result labour productivity, ie, output per unit of labour input increases, which can help workers earn higher wages.

Sixth, expanding incomes lead to more demand for goods and services. If an economy is not able to produce enough to meet such demand, it has to rely on imports and therefore spend a lot of foreign exchange. If the economy does not earn enough from exporting, it will be difficult to meet the growing demand. Industrialisation therefore helps an economy to save and also generate foreign exchange through exports.

5.2 Types of Industries

Industries can be classified on the basis of

(a) **Users:** If the output is consumed by the final consumer, it is called a consumer goods sector. If the output is consumed by another producer, it is called a capital goods sector. There are industries that produce raw materials for other industries such as cement and steel. Such industries are called basic goods industries.

(b) **Type of Inputs Used:** Industries are also classified based on the kind of raw material used such as agro-processing, textiles sector, rubber products, leather goods, etc.

(c) **Ownership:** Firms may be privately owned, publicly owned (by the government, central or state), jointly owned by the private and public sector, or cooperatively owned (cooperatives).

(d) **Size:** Firms may be large, small or medium based on their volume of output, sales or employment or on the basis of the amount of investments made. The Indian government normally uses the investment criterion to decide whether a firm is small, medium or large. There are also micro or tiny enterprises that are smaller than even small firms. This classification is important because the government often provides financial, infrastructural or subsidy support to the smaller firms to promote them.

The small sector is seen as important for two reasons. One, it is believed to generate more employment than the large-scale sector, which is likely to use more advanced and



automated technologies and therefore may not generate enough employment. Second, the small scale sector allows for a larger number of entrepreneurs to emerge from less privileged backgrounds.

Till the 1980s, it was widely believed that large firms are more efficient and can out-compete the smaller firms. But at present, based on experiences of industrialisation in different parts of the world, it is believed that when small firms specialising in one sector are geographically concentrated in specific locations, and linked to one another through production and learning, they tend to be equally if not more efficient than large scale enterprises. Such agglomerations of small firms are called industrial clusters.

5.3 Industrial Clusters

Industrial clusters are groups of firms in a defined geographic area that share common markets, technologies and skill requirements. An important aspect of clusters is the nature of inter-firm networks and interactions. Clusters where firms specialise in one stage of the production process and supply inputs or absorb the output of another firm in the cluster is critical to the efficiency and competitiveness of the cluster. The advantages of industrial clusters or districts was first observed by the famous economist Alfred Marshall in the 1920s when he tried to understand the working of clusters of small firms in the metal-working and textile regions in England. While the notion of an 'industrial district' was developed by Marshall, it was only after the success of small firms in Italy in the 1980s that it became popular. Policy-makers in developing countries like India began to promote them actively as they realized that there several such small firm clusters in the country.

The following are the chief characteristics of a successful cluster.

- close inter-firm collaboration
- inter-firm competition based on innovation
- a socio-cultural identity, which facilitates trust
- multi-skilled workforce
- active self-help organisations, and
- supportive regional and municipal governments.

Firms are therefore expected to collaborate and compete with one another at the same time. By collaborating, they can expand their capacity and also learn from one another. Through competition, they are forced to become more efficient. Apart from the Chennai region, industrial growth has been concentrated in several small town clusters, throughout the state, with the western region being more dominant. These clusters specialise in a range of activities like clothing, home furnishings, textiles, leather, poultry, coir products, transport equipment servicing, engineering services and auto component making.

5.3.1 How Do Clusters Originate?

Clusters may arise due to many factors. Certain clusters evolve over a long time in history when artisans settle in one locality and evolve over centuries. Handloom weaving clusters are one examples of this development. Or else, in some sectors, when a large firm is established, a cluster of firms may emerge to take care of its input and service requirements. At times, governments may decide to encourage manufacturing using raw materials from a region, which may also lead to emergence of clusters.

5.4 Historical Development of Industrialisation in Tamil Nadu

There is lot of evidence for presence of industrial activities such as textiles, ship-building, iron and steel making and pottery in precolonial Tamil Nadu. Given the vast coastline, the region has been involved in trade with both South-East and West Asia for several



centuries. Colonial policies also contributed to the decline of the handloom weaving industry due to competition from machine-made imports from England. But some industries also developed during the colonial period and provided the basis for subsequent industrialisation in the state.

5.4.1 Industrialisation in the Colonial Period

There are two sets of factors that have contributed to the process. The introduction of cotton cultivation in western and southern Tamil Nadu by the colonial government led to the emergence of a large-scale textile sector in these parts, which involved ginning, pressing, spinning and weaving operations. The introduction of railways also expanded the market for cotton yarn and helped develop the sector.

Second, increase in trade during this period led to industrial development around two of the most active ports in the region, Chennai and Tuticorin. The Chennai region also saw the beginning of the automobile sector during this period along with leather. The growth of jaggery industry in south Tamil Nadu is another example of this. Match factories too emerged during the colonial period in the Sivakasi region, which later on became a major centre for fireworks production and printing. Port-related activity too contributed to the growth of the region. Leather production was also taking place in Dindigul, Vellore and Ambur areas.

In Western Tamil Nadu, the emergence of textiles industries also led to demand and starting of textile machinery industry in the region. This textile machinery industry in turn led to the rise of a number of small workshops for repair and producers of machinery components. Another major development in the western region is the introduction of electricity from hydro-electric power in the 1930s. Availability of electricity allowed for use of oil engines for drawing ground water. This led to both expansion of agriculture as

well as increase in demand for oil engines. In turn, it led to emergence of workshops for servicing engines and also for addressing the demand for spare parts. Foundries began to be set up and agricultural machinery began to be produced.

5.4.2 Post-Independence to early 1990s

Soon after independence, several large enterprises were set up by both the central and state governments in different segments such as the Integral Coach Factory in Chennai to make railway coaches and the Bharat Heavy Electricals Limited (BHEL) in Tiruchirappalli manufacture to boilers and turbines. BHEL in turn led to the emergence of an industrial cluster of several small firms catering to its input requirements. Heavy Vehicles Factory was set up to manufacture tanks in Avadi on the outskirts of Chennai. Standard Motors too started manufacturing cars in Chennai. Ashok Motors (later Ashok Leyland) and Standard Motors together helped form an automobile cluster in the Chennai region. The Avadi industrial estate was established in the 1950s to support the small and medium companies supplying to the large firms in the region. More hydro-electric power projects in the state were also initiated to increase the spread of electrification. The government played a major role in all these processes. The Salem Steel Plant was set up in 1973 to produce stainless steel.

The Coimbatore region also witnessed diversification from textiles to textile machinery as well as agricultural machinery like electric motors and pumpsets for drawing ground water.

The 1970s and 1980s saw the setting up of emergence of powerloom weaving clusters in the Coimbatore region as well as expansion of cotton knitwear cluster in Tiruppur and home furnishings cluster in Karur. This period also saw more encouragement of the small and medium sector with setting up of industrial estates by the state government in different parts. The Hosur industrial cluster

is a successful case of how such policy efforts to promote industrial estates helped develop industries in a backward region.

5.4.3 Industrialisation in Tamil Nadu – Liberalization Phase

The final phase of industrialisation is the post-reforms period since the early 1990s. The reforms made the state governments more responsible for resource mobilisation and they were forced to compete with each other to attract private investments for industrialisation. Incentives such as cheap land, tax concessions and subsidised but quality power were all offered to woo investors. Trade liberalisation and currency devaluation also helped open up export markets. This led to two major developments.

First, because of trade liberalisation measures, exports of textiles, home furnishings and leather products began to grow rapidly. Second, efforts to attract investments led to entry of leading multinational firms (MNCs) into the state, especially in the automobile sector. Since automobile sector relies heavily on component makers, entry of MNCs not only brought along other MNC component suppliers but also opened up new market opportunities for domestic component producers. Chennai region also emerged as a hub for electronics industry with MNCs such as Nokia, Foxconn, Samsung and Flextronics opening plants on the city's outskirts. A significant share of these investments has come up in special economic zones in the districts bordering Chennai. Tamil Nadu has often been hailed as a model for successfully using the SEZ route to attract productive investments.

Other important industries in the state that evolved over a much longer period include sugar, fertilizers, cement, agricultural implements, iron and steel, chemicals, transformers and paper.

Because of all these factors, Tamil Nadu at present has the largest number of factories among all states in India and also has the largest share of workforce employed in manufacturing. Importantly, it is more labour

intensive compared to other industrially advanced states like Maharashtra and Gujarat. The major industries are automobiles, auto-components, light and heavy engineering, machinery, cotton, textiles, rubber, food products, transport equipment, chemicals, and leather and leather goods. Unlike other states, the industries are spread across all regions of the state (there are 27 clusters in 13 districts) with many of them being export oriented as well. The state has a well-developed network of roads, rail, air and major ports.

The diffusion of industrialisation also implies a widening of the social base of entrepreneurship. Unlike in North India where entrepreneurs and business groups are drawn mostly from merchant communities, in Tamil Nadu, the entrepreneurs come from a dispersed social background, with a relatively small size of capital. Further, the spatial spread of industries is higher. The state also has a better mix of large, small and household industries. This diffused process of industrialisation and corresponding urbanisation has paved the way for better rural-urban linkages in Tamil Nadu than in most other states.

5.5 Major Industrial Clusters and Their Specialisation in Tamil Nadu

Automotive Clusters

Chennai is nicknamed as "The Detroit of Asia" because of its large auto industry base. Chennai is home to large number of auto assembly and component making firms. While there were a few domestic firms like TVS, TI Cycles, Ashok Leyland and Standard Motors earlier, in the post-reform period, several MNC firms like Hyundai, Ford, Daimler-Benz and Renault-Nissan have opened factories in the region. This in turn has attracted a number of component suppliers from foreign countries. Many local firms too cater to component production for all these firms.



Automotive Industry



Hosur is another auto cluster with firms like TVS and Ashok Leyland having their factories there. Coimbatore region is also developing into an auto component cluster.

Truck and Bus Body Building Industry Clusters

The Namakkal-Tiruchengode belt in western Tamil Nadu is known for its truck body building industry. About 150 of the 250 units in this sector are located in this cluster including 12 large-sized body building houses. Karur is another major hub with more than 50 units. Many entrepreneurs were previous employees in a big firm involved in body building who came out to set up their own units.



Truck Body Building Industry

Textile Clusters



Textile Industry

Tamil Nadu is home to the largest textiles sector in the country. Because of the development of cotton textile industry since the colonial period, Coimbatore often referred as the "Manchester of South India". At present, most of the spinning mills have moved to the smaller towns and villages at a radius over 100 to 150 km around the Coimbatore city. Tamil Nadu is the biggest producer of cotton yarn in the country.



Palladam and Somanur, small towns near Coimbatore and the villages near these towns, are home to a dynamic powerloom weaving cluster as well. Powerloom is however more widespread with Erode and Salem region too having a large number of power loom units.



Tiruppur is famous for clustering of a large number of firms producing cotton knitwear. It accounts for nearly 80% of the country's cotton knitwear exports and generates employment in the range of over three lakh people since the late 1980s. It is also a major producer for the domestic market. Because of its success in the global market, it is seen as one of the most dynamic clusters in the Global South. While initially most firms were run by local entrepreneurs, at present, some of the leading garment exporters in India have set up factories here.

Global South

Countries in the southern hemisphere are called Global South countries

Apart from body building, Karur is a major centre of exports of home furnishings like table cloth, curtains, bed covers and towels. Bhavani and Kumrapalayam are again major centres of production of carpets, both for the domestic and the global markets.

Apart from such modern clusters, there are also traditional artisanal clusters such as Madurai and Kanchipuram that are famous for silk and cotton handloom sarees. Even these clusters have witnessed a degree of modernisation with use of powerlooms in several units.

Leather and Leather Goods Clusters

Tamil Nadu accounts for 60 per cent of leather tanning capacity in India and 38 per cent of all leather



Leather Industry

footwear, garments and components. Hundreds of leather and tannery facilities are located around Vellore and its nearby towns, such as Ranipet, Ambur and Vaniyambadi. The Vellore district is the top exporter of finished leather goods in the country. Chennai also has a large number of leather product making units involved in exports. There is another clustering of leather processing in Dindigul and Erode. The leather products sector too is a major employment generator.

Fireworks, Matches and Printing Cluster

Sivakasi region, once famous for its match industry has now become a major centre for printing and fireworks in the country. It is believed to contribute to 90% of India's fireworks production, 80% of safety matches and 60% of offset printing solutions. The offset printing industry has a high degree of specialisation among firms with several of them undertaking just one operation required for printing. All these industries have their origin in the colonial period and at present offer employment to a large number of workers.



Fireworks Industry

Electronics and Information Technology (IT) Clusters

After the economic reforms started in the early 1990s, the state has seen the entry of hardware and electronics manufacturers like Nokia, Foxconn, Motorola, Sony-Ericsson, Samsung and Dell making cellular handset devices, circuit boards and consumer electronics. They have all been set up in the Chennai region. While Nokia has been closed down, Chennai still continues to be a minor electronics hub in the country.



Tidel Park, Chennai

Similarly, with the expansion of the software sector, Chennai and, to a limited extent Coimbatore, have emerged as centres for software services.

Information Technology Specific Special Economic Zones :

In order to make development more inclusive, Tier II cities such as Coimbatore, Madurai, Trichy, Tirunelveli, Hosur and Salem have been promoted as IT investment destinations apart from the Chennai region. To facilitate this, ELCOT has established ELCOSEZs (IT Specific Special Economic Zones) in the following eight locations:

- Chennai – Sholinganallur
- Coimbatore – Vilankurichi
- Madurai – Ilandhaikulam
- Madurai – Vadapalanji-Kinnimangalam
- Trichy – Navalpattu

Companies desiring to set up units in the state can avail themselves of the facilities provided in ELCOSEZs. The possibility of setting up ELCOSEZs in new locations will be explored based on demand and viability. (Map Information Communication Technology Policy - 2018–19)

- Tirunelveli – Gangaikondan
- Salem – Jagirammappalayam
- Hosur – Viswanathapuram

5.6 The Policy Factors that Helped the Industrialisation Process in Tamil Nadu

Policy factors can be divided into three aspects:

Education

Industries require skilled human resources. Apart from a lot of attention to primary education to promote literacy and basic arithmetic skills, the state is known for its vast supply of technical human resources. It is home to one of the largest number of engineering colleges, polytechnics and Industrial Training Centres in the country.

Infrastructure

The widespread diffusion of electrification has contributed to the spread of industrialisation to smaller towns and villages in the state. Along with electrification, Tamil Nadu is known for its excellent transport infrastructure, especially minor roads that connect rural parts of the state to nearby towns and cities. A combination of public and private transport has also facilitated rural to urban connectivity and therefore connect small producers to markets better.

Industrial Promotion

Apart from investments in education and transport and energy infrastructure, active policy efforts were made to promote specific sectors and also industrialisation in specific regions. Policies to promote specific sectors like automobile, auto components, bio technology and Information and communication Technology sectors have been formulated in the post reform period. In addition, the state has put in place several industrial promotion agencies for both large enterprises and the small and medium segments, as well as to provide supporting infrastructure.

5.6.1 The following are some agencies that have played a key role in industrialization in the state

SIPCOT (State Industries Promotion Corporation of Tamil Nadu), 1971

SIPCOT was formed in the year 1971 to promote industrial growth in the state by setting up industrial estates.



SIPCOT

**TANSIDCO (Tamil Nadu Small Industries
Development Corporation), 1970**

TANSIDCO is a state-agency of the state of Tamil Nadu established in the year 1970 to promote small-scale industries in the state. It gives subsidies and provide technical assistance for new firms in the small scale sector.

**TIDCO (Tamil Nadu Industrial
Development Corporation), 1965**

TIDCO is another government agency to promote industries in the state and to establish industrial estates.

**TIIC (Tamil Nadu Industrial Investment
Corporation Ltd.), 1949**

TIIC is intended to provide low-cost financial support for both setting up new units and also for expansion of existing units. Though it is meant to meet the requirements of all types of firms, 90% of support goes to micro, small and medium enterprises.

**TANSI (Tamil Nadu Small Industries
Corporation Ltd.), 1965**

TANSI was formed in 1965 to take over the small scale-units that were set up and run by the Department of Industries and Commerce. It is supposed to be the first industrial corporation operating in the domain for small enterprises.

**5.6.2 Emerging Services Sector
in Tamil Nadu**

With technological changes, industries too are not able to absorb labour. Automation

Special Economic Zones (SEZs)

A policy was introduced on in April 2000 for the settling up of special Economic Zones in the country with a view to a hassle-free environment for exports. Units may be set up in SEZ units are on a self-certification basis. The policy provides for setting up of SEZs in the public, private, joint sector or by state governments. It is also envisaged the some of the existing Export Processing Zones, would be converted in to Special Economic Zones.

Accordingly, the government has converted Export Processing Zones located at following places.

Nanguneri SEZ	–	A multi product SEZ, Thirunelveli
Ennore SEZ	–	Thermal power project, Vayalur
Coimbatore SEZ	–	IT Parks
Hosur SEZ	–	Auto Engineering, Electronics, Defence and Aerospace
Perambalur SEZ	–	Multi product SEZ
Autocity SEZ	–	Automobile/Auto Components, Tiruvallur
India-Singapore SEZ	–	IT & ITES, Electronic Hardware, Logistics and Warehousing – Thiruvallur District
Bio-Pharmaceuticals SEZ	–	Clinical Research Organisation, Poison Control Centre, Centre for Regenerative Medicine, Medicine Research

Madras Export Processing Zone (MEPZ)

MEPZ is a Special Economic Zone in Chennai. It is one of the seven export processing zones in the country set up the central government. It was established in 1984 to promote foreign direct investment, enhance foreign exchange earnings and create greater employment opportunities in the region. The MPEZ headquarters is located on GST Road in Tambaram, Chennai.

has been reducing the need for labour in manufacturing. The services sector has emerged as a much bigger employer over the last three decades. Tamil Nadu has become a hub for some important and dynamic service sectors such as software services, healthcare and education services. Healthcare and educational services are diffused across major cities, Chennai and Coimbatore in particular. Software services is, however, largely confined to Chennai. Only in the last ten years, a few software firms have moved to Coimbatore.

5.6.3 Issues with Industrialisation

Though Tamil Nadu has emerged as a relatively highly industrialised state in the country, the state faces a few issues in sustaining the process. To begin with, some clusters, especially chemicals, textiles and leather clusters, tend to generate a lot of polluting effluents that affect health. The effluents also pollute water bodies into which effluents are let into and also adjoining agricultural lands. This issue requires urgent attention. Second, employment generation potential has declined because of use of frontier technologies because of the need to compete globally. Quality of employment also has suffered in recent years as most workers are employed only temporarily. This issue too requires urgent attention among policy makers.

Startup India Scheme (Launched 16-Jan-2016):

Startup India Scheme is an initiative of the Indian government, the primary objective of which is the promotion of startups, generation of employment and wealth creation.

Standup India Scheme (Launched 5-April-2016):

Standup India Scheme is to facilitate bank loans between ₹10 lakh and ₹1 crore to at least one Scheduled Caste (SC) or Scheduled Tribe (ST) borrower and one woman borrower per bank branch for setting up a greenfield enterprise.

5.7 Entrepreneur

Entrepreneur is an innovator of new ideas and business processes. He possesses management skills, strong team building abilities and essential leadership qualities to manage a business.

Entrepreneurship

Entrepreneurship is a process of a action of an entrepreneur who undertakes to establish his enterprise. It is the ability to create and build something.

5.7.1 Role of an Entrepreneur

Entrepreneurs play a most important role in the economic growth and development of a country's economy.

1. They promote development of industries and help to remove regional disparities by industrialising rural and backward areas.
2. They help the country to increase the GDP and Per Capita Income.
3. They contribute towards the development of society by reducing concentration of income and wealth.
4. They promote capital formation by mobilising the idle savings of the citizens and country's export trade.
5. Entrepreneurs provide large-scale employment to artisans, technically qualified persons and professionals and work in an environment of changing technology and try to maximise profits by innovations.
6. They enable the people to avail better quality goods at lower prices, which results in the improvement of their standard of living.

SUMMARY

- Industrialisation refers to the process of using modern techniques of production to produce goods that are required by both consumers and other producers on a large scale.
- Industrial clusters are groups of firms in a defined geographic area that share common markets, technologies and skill requirements.
- Clusters may arise due to many factors. Certain clusters evolve over a long time in history when artisans settle in one locality and evolve over centuries.
- The Coimbatore region also witnessed diversification from textiles to textile machinery as well as agricultural machinery like electric motors and pumpsets for drawing ground water.
- Chennai is nicknamed as "The Detroit of Asia" because of its large auto industry base.

A-Z GLOSSARY

agglomerations	a mass or collection of things	திரட்சிகள்
Industrial Clusters	Relating to or characterised by industry.	தொழில் உற்பத்தி தொகுப்புகள்
Emergence	the process of coming into existence	தோற்றம்
Component	a part or element of a larger whole, especially a part of a machine or vehicle	உதிரிபாகங்கள்
diffusion	the spreading of something more widely	பரவல்
Artisanal	relating to or characteristic of an artisan	கைவினை சார்ந்த
Effluents	liquid waste or sewage discharged into a river or the sea	திரவக் கழிவுகள்
frontier	the extreme limit of understanding or achievement in a particular area.	எல்லை



EXERCISE

I Choose the correct answer



- 'The Detroit of Asia' is _____.
a) Tuticorin
b) Coimbatore
c) Chennai
d) Madurai
- Pumpsets and motors are produced mostly in
a) Salem
b) Coimbatore
c) Chennai
d) Dharampuri
- Tuticorin is known as
a) Gateway of India
b) Gateway of Tamil Nadu
c) Pump city
d) None of these
- _____ are an essential aspect of a nation's development.
a) agriculture
b) industry
c) railway
d) none of these
- Tiruppur is known for
a) Leather tanning
b) Lock making
c) Knitwear
d) Agro-processing



6. Along with Ambur and Vaniyambadi _____ is also a centre for leather goods exports.
- a. Chennai b. Sivakasi
c. Coimbatore d. Madurai
7. IT means
- a) Indian Technology
b) Information Technology
c) Institute of Technology
d) Initiative Technology
8. A successful industrial cluster entirely created by the Tamil Nadu is
- a) Hosur b) Dindigul
c) Kovilpatti d) Tirunelveli
9. SIPCOT was formed in the year
- a) 1972 b) 1976
c) 1971 d) 1978
10. Which is the Tamil Nadu Industrial Development Agency?
- a) SIPCOT b) TANSIDCO
c) TIDCO d) All of these

II Fill in the blanks

- _____ are very important in the modern economic activities of man.
- _____ are groups of firms in a defined geographic area that share common market and technologies.
- Hundred of leather and tannery facilities are located around _____ District in Tamil Nadu.
- _____ is fondly called as 'Little Japan'.
- Special Economic Zones policy was introduced on in _____.
- _____ is an innovator of new ideas and business processes.

III Choose the correct statement

- I. Entrepreneurship promotes capital formation by mobilising the idle savings of the public.
- II. They do not provide large scale employment to artisan, technically qualified persons and professionals.
- III. Entrepreneurs help the country to increase the GDP and per capita income

IV. Entrepreneurs do not promote country's export trade.

- a) I and IV is correct
b) I only correct
c) III and IV is correct
d) I and III is correct

IV Pick out odd one

- Which one of the following is not having leather factories?
a) Ranipet b) Dharmapuri
c) Ambur d) Vaniyambadi
- Which one of the following is not an industrial developing agency?
a) TIDCO b) SIDCO
c) MEPCO d) SIPCOT

V Match the following

- Entrepreneur - Export Processing Zone
- MEPZ - Coimbatore
- Indian Ordnance Factory - Organizer
- TNPL - Aravankadu
- Machester of south India - Karur

VI Write Short Answer

- Why should a developing economy diversify out of agriculture?
- Why are wages low in the agricultural sector?
- What is meant by an industrial cluster?
- What are the routes for cluster formation?
- Mention the 3 areas of policy making that helped Tamil Nadu become one of the most industrialised states in the country.
- Mention any three industrial development agencies in Tamil Nadu and their role
- What are the problems of industrialization currently in Tamil Nadu?
- What is Meant by Entrepreneur?
- What is Entrepreneurship?

VII Write Brief Answer

- What are the contributions of industrialization to development?
- Write a note on history of industrialisation in Tamil Nadu.

3. What are the important characteristics of successful industrial clusters?
4. Write about the Textile industry cluster in Tamil Nadu?.
5. Write in detail about the types of policies adopted by the Tamil Nadu government to industrialise.
6. Explain the role of Entrepreneur?

VIII. Case studies

1. Choose a cluster in Tamil Nadu based on online research and write a note on it.

IX. Activity and Project

1. Write a note on a cluster or a firm near your school/home based on your observations.

X. Life Skills

1. Teacher and Students discuss about the entrepreneurs and their activities and Write an a essay in the topic of “If you are like a Entrepreneur”.



REFERENCE BOOKS

1. *Role of Entrepreneurship in economic development*, D.K.Sinha
2. *The Productivity Analysis of Industrial Clusters in India - Department of Industries & Commerce* (Government of Tamil Nadu)
3. State Industrial Profile - Tamil Nadu
4. Indian Industrial Clusters - Keshab Das



ICT CORNER

Steps

- Open the Browser and type the URL given below.
- You can see the list of SIPCOT in Tamil Nadu. When you click anyone in the list, you will get the details of SIPCOT in new tab.
- For example, click on the minimum support price of paddy. You can see the yearwise minimum support price of paddy, wheat and coarsegrain.
- Likewise, you can view regionwise procurement also.



Class X – Social Science (Volume II)

List of Authors and Reviewers

History

Chairperson

Dr. K.A. Manikumar
Professor (Rtd), Dept. of History
Manonmaniam Sundaranar
University, Thirunelveli

Co-chairperson

Dr. A.R. Venkatachalapathy
Professor, Dept. of History
Madras Institute of Development
Studies, Chennai

Authors

Dr. Maavendar Singh
Assistant Professor
S.R.M. University, Amaravathi
Andhrapradesh

Dr. Venkat Ramanujam
Dept. of History
Madras Christian College
Tambaram, Chennai

Dr. S. Ananathakrishnan
Associate Professor
A.M. Jain College, Chennai

Dr. Jeevanantham
Asst. Professor
Central University, Sikkim

Content Readers

Dr. T.S. Saravanan
Deputy Director
TNTBESC, Chennai

S. Gomathi Manickam
B.T. Assistant
GHSS, Old Perungalathur
Kanchipuram Dist.

K. Velu
B.T. Assistant
GGHSS, Thalaivasal
Salem Dist.

P. Balamurugan
PG Assistant
GBHSS, Thammampatti
Salem Dist.

V. Velmurugan
BT. Assistant
GHSS, Vellalagundam
Salem Dist.

A. Jafar Ali
P.G. Assistant
GHSS, Keeripatty
Salem Dist.

Dr. K. Suresh
B.T. Assistant
Kumara Rajah Muthiah HSS
Chennai

Geography

Domain Expert & Reviewer

V. Tamilarasan
Associate Professor & Head
Govt. Arts College, Karur

Author

T. Shrijanani
P.G. Assistant
GBHSS, Pappireddipatti
Dharmapuri Dist.

Content Readers

Dr. P. Arul
Associate Professor
Govt. Arts College, Salem.

Dr. K. Rutharvel Murthy
Guest Lecturer
Arignar Anna Govt. Arts College
Namakkal

Dr. S. Senthil Kumar
Guest Lecturer
Arignar Anna Govt. Arts College
Namakkal

K.G. Jothi
B.T. Assistant
GHSS, Vrinchipuram
Vellore Dist.

QR Code Team

R. Jaganathan, SGT
PUMS, Ganesapuram, Polur
Tiruvannamalai Dist.

A. Devi Jesintha, B.T. Asst.
GH School, N.M. Kovil
Vellore Dist.

V. Padmavathi, B.T. Asst.
GH School, Vetriyur,
Thirumanur, Ariyalur.

ICT Team

D. Nagaraj
GHSS., Rappusal
Pudukkotai Dist.

Civics

Domain Expert

Dr. M. Kaliyaperumal
Professor & Head (Retd)
Presidency College, Chennai

Reviewer

A. Karunanandam
HOD (Retd), Dept. of History
Vivekananda College, Chennai

Author

S. Gomathi Manickam
B.T. Assistant
GHSS, Old Perungalathur
Kanchipuram Dist.

Content Readers

K. Velu
B.T. Assistant
GGHSS, Thalaivasal, Salem Dist.

P. Balamurugan
PG Assistant
GBHSS, Thammampatti
Salem Dist.

V. Velmurugan
BT. Assistant
GHSS, Vellalagundam
Salem Dist.

A. Jafar Ali
P.G. Assistant
GHSS, Keeripatty, Salem Dist.

Economics

Domain Expert

Dr. R. Subramanian
Professor (Retd),
Dept. of Economics
Salem Sowdeswari College, Salem

Reviewer

Dr. J. Jeyarajan
Director
Institute of development alternatives
Chennai

Authors

L. Gowsalyadevi
P.G. Assistant
GHSS, Thoppur
Dharmapuri Dist.

Dr. M. Kumar
P.G. Assistant
GHSS, Madhanackainpatti
Salem Dist.

D. Vani
PG. Assistant
Malco. Vidyalaya MHSS
Mettur Dam, Salem Dist.

Academic Adviser & Expert

Dr. P. Kumar
Joint Director (Syllabus)
SCERT, Chennai

Academic & Subjects Co-ordinators

T. Srinivasan
Principal
DIET
Krishnagiri Dist.

P. Suresh
P. G. Assistant
GGHSS, Attur
Salem Dist.

Art and Design Team

Layout

Kamatichi Balan Arumugam
Arun Kamaraj Palanisamy
S. Ashok Kumar
R. Balasubramani
R. Gopinath
Selvakumar Manickam
V. Sridhar

In-House QC

Rajesh Thangappan
Adison Raj A

Art

B. Ravikumar
V. Vinoth Kumar

Wrapper Design

Kathir Arumugam

Typist

R. Mohanambal
Velachery, Chennai

Layout Co-ordination

Ramesh Munisamy

This book has been printed on 80 G.S.M.
Elegant Maplitho paper.

Printed by offset at:

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.





NOTES

[illegible]